

Word Power: Phrasal Verbs and Compounds



Planet Communication

Editors

Angeliki Athanasiadou
Christa van der Walt

Mouton de Gruyter
Berlin · New York

Word Power: Phrasal Verbs and Compounds

A Cognitive Approach

by

Brygida Rudzka-Ostyn

Mouton de Gruyter
Berlin · New York 2003

Mouton de Gruyter (formerly Mouton, The Hague)
is a Division of Walter de Gruyter GmbH & Co. KG, Berlin.

⊗ Printed on acid-free paper which falls within the guidelines
of the ANSI to ensure permanence and durability.

ISBN 3-11-017703-X hb
ISBN 3-11-017704-8 pb

Bibliographic information published by Die Deutsche Bibliothek

Die Deutsche Bibliothek lists this publication in the Deutsche
Nationalbibliografie; detailed bibliographic data is available in the
Internet at <<http://dnb.ddb.de>>.

© Copyright 2003 by Walter de Gruyter GmbH & Co. KG, 10785 Berlin
All rights reserved, including those of translation into foreign languages. No part of this
book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechan-
ical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, with-
out permission in writing from the publisher.
Cover design: Sigurd Wendland, Berlin.
Printed in Germany.

Preface

Word Power: Phrasal Verbs and Compounds, a Cognitive Approach is a textbook for guided self-learning intended for post-intermediate and advanced students of English.

The textbook contains some 1,100 phrasal verbs and compounds used with 17 particles and/or prepositions which combine with some 500 different verbs, nouns or adjectives. The book deals in the first place with the major problems encountered by even advanced students, viz. understanding and mastering the metaphorical meanings of the particles and the phrasal verbs as a whole. Secondly, depending on the students' level of competence, the book confronts them with another 2,500 to 3,000 less frequently used words in the sentences, explanations, collocations and glosses in connection with the phrasal verbs and compounds. These words constitute an equally essential part of the book and need to be mastered to the same extent as the phrasal material itself.

Expanding students' word power efficiently

In order to help more advanced grown-up learners to rapidly and significantly expand their lexicon, the basis of accurate and fluent communication, we have implemented some of the major findings from both cognitive and applied linguistics.

First, the phrasal verbs and compounds are grouped around each particle. This particle-based arrangement reveals the networks of related meanings of the particles. As experiments have shown, this fascinating insight-oriented approach – visually enhanced by intentionally abstract drawings – enables and encourages the students to create their own contextual schemata, which all contribute to learning the metaphorical extensions faster, better, and above all, in a much more gratifying way.

Second, this textbook implements a battery of techniques used in applied linguistics to develop intensively the students' vocabulary in artificial school settings. It has been shown experimentally that learners fix new words or new meanings in a foreign language best:

- if they are systematically and explicitly focused upon;
- if they are embedded in contexts;
- if they are hooked up with other words they often co-occur with (collocations);
- if learners write them out;

- if there are opportunities to guess their meanings (cf. *infra*);
- if contexts, glosses, explanations make target words or meanings readily accessible reducing to a minimum wild guessing and/or time-consuming dictionary searches – however useful the latter may sometimes be;
- if their presentation in exetests (EXErcises + TESTS) allows for reviewing them as often as needed;
- if they are activated orally (through learner-centred or horizontal class activities in pairs).

In this guided self-learning approach, teachers play more than ever a crucial role. As true managers they divide the material into weekly portions, organize and supervise the horizontal classroom work, help the students gain (cognitive) insights into the related meanings of the particles or into knowledge they can not easily acquire by themselves. Finally they provide students with feedback through tests.

How this textbook could be used

Methodological suggestions are always welcome but should never be taken as a must. Teachers or students should therefore consider the suggestions below only as a source of inspiration to add to their own experience.

The introductory chapter

The introductory chapter provides only the essential syntactic and semantic information necessary to understand what phrasal verbs and compounds are about. Even in this basic chapter there might be little classical *teaching* since this book is essentially written for guided self-learning. The questions at the end of the introductory chapter could therefore also be handled horizontally (in pairs or small groups).

1 Preliminary individual work (preferably outside the classroom)

As classroom time is generally very limited and since the book is written for post-intermediate or advanced learners, students might be asked to do all low-level work (cf. *infra*) individually before coming to class.

They can access the missing phrasal elements and their meanings in three ways: (1) the first letter(s) of each verb/noun/adjective is indicated to the right of each sentence, (2) the verbs/nouns to be filled in are also alphabetically arranged on top of each exetest (EXercise + TEST), and (3) in the key at the end of a section. Glosses at the bottom of each exetest explain less frequently used words in the sentential contexts.

Learners might proceed along the following lines:

- 1 they guess the verbs/nouns to be filled in, check to see if their guesses are correct and complete the initial letters or clusters in the spaces to the right of the sentences;
- 2 they consult the glosses for words they do not know or are not sure of;
- 3 they read (preferably aloud) the sentences while looking also at the verbs/compounds;
- 4 they cover up the verbs/compounds and read the sentences (while completing the dotted spaces); they may want to do this reading several times until they attain natural fluency;

- 5 they change the order in which they read the sentences: first from top to bottom, then the other way round or at random;
- 6 they tick off the sentences where their reading and completing is least fluent;
- 7 they cover up the sentences and this time use the verbs as starters for identical/similar/totally different sentences or contexts in which the verbs fit.

N.B. Time being money, they focus on the sentences over which they hesitate.

2 Classroom work

Classroom activities could consist of two types of interaction: one horizontal, i.e. in pairs, and one vertical, i.e. teacher-students.

2.1 Simultaneous 'student – student' work (in pairs or in small groups)

Oral horizontal class activities could consist of working in pairs/small groups of students in which the learners take turns, and choose from the following activities:

- 1 they define, paraphrase, explain (in their own words or through examples/synonyms) any words (and not only verbs) any one of the (two or more) members finds difficult;
They can also start from some of the glosses to find the words related to them.
- 2 they cover up the verbs (filled in previously to the right) and read (some of) the sentences aloud; take turns to tell the other person which sentence (s)he has to read and complete;
- 3 they cover up the sentences and start from the verbs to the right creating similar or different sentences in which the verbs fit;
- 4 they explain how the verbs specify different ways of moving: *fly, jump, send, spring, walk*, etc.;
- 5 they identify in some of the sentences the different trajectors/entities (that exemplify a certain movement) or the landmarks/containers;
- 6 they show which particles have spatial meanings and which ones have metaphorical meanings;
- 7 they indicate in which sentences the particle follows the direct object;
- 8 they pick out the sentences in which the landmarks (points/containers/surfaces) are not specified;
- 9 they drop the landmark (point/container/surface) where it is mentioned and add one where it is not specified.

P.S. Activities 5 to 9 might rather be done under the teacher's supervision.

One should not overkill by doing too many analyses, however. The quantity of material covered is as important as the quality of the knowledge acquired. As an expert-manager, the teacher is best placed to decide which tasks should be done only occasionally or not at all.

2.2 Teacher – students interaction (either in pairs or in small groups)

As suggested above, the more difficult some of the above activities are, the more the teacher-manager might turn to vertical interaction. One activity in which (s)he should play a leading role is in helping the students discover which semantic features are conveyed by the particle or by the phrasal verb as a whole.

3 Conclusion

Again, it may be stressed that the purpose of this book is to expand massively and qualitatively the students' vocabulary in general and that of phrasal verbs/compounds in particular. This is therefore not a textbook on (some aspects of) cognitive linguistics though it also uses its insights as a means to achieve this lexical goal.

Acknowledgements

This pedagogical textbook with a filtered and simplified cognitive analysis of phrasal verbs and compounds is Brygida Rudzka's work. As a result of her untimely death she was unable to finish it.

Since at least two decades have evolved since the analyses of the most salient features of phrasal verbs/compounds were published in doctoral dissertations, I am very much indebted to René Dirven, who went through different versions of this textbook meticulously, updating and refining the linguistic analyses while adding numerous valuable methodological comments and suggestions which have greatly improved this textbook.

I am also very grateful to Gene Casad, Stefan Gries, Vincent Lobet, Michael Taylor and Irena Wierzbicka for providing additional information, corrections and suggestions.

A special word of thanks goes to Lukasz Tabakowski and Yves Mine, who drew the schemata; to Elzbieta Tabakowska, Andrzej Kurtyka, Angeliki Athanasiadou and their colleagues and former high school students and teachers in Krakow and Thessaloniki for experimenting with parts of the manuscript and providing us with precious feedback.

I also owe a particular debt of gratitude to Jane Oehlert and Peter Kelly for sharing with us their native-speaker intuitions as well as to the many native speakers who thought up the sentences illustrating different metaphorical meanings of the phrasal verbs and compounds.

April 2003

Paul Ostyn

Table of contents

Preface	v
How this textbook could be used	vii
Acknowledgements	x
Introduction: Words and the World	1
1 The syntactic frames of phrasal verbs	1
2 The meaning of phrasal verbs	2
2.1 The meaning of the verb	2
2.2 The meaning of the particles	3
2.3 The metaphorical meaning of the whole expression ‘verb + particle’	5
2.4 A phrasal verb with one particle often has several meanings ..	5
3 What do we use language for?	6
4 How do we perceive and conceive reality?	8
4.1 The trajector and landmark: the moving entity and the place (point, container, surface) where it moves	9
4.2 Symbols used in the drawings	11
4.3 Questions on the Introduction	12
1 OUT is leaving a container	14
1.1 OUT: entities moving out of containers	14
1.2 OUT: eat or inviting to eat away from home	18
1.3 OUT: sets, groups are containers	19
1.4 OUT: bodies, minds, mouths are viewed as containers	20
1.5 OUT: states/situations are containers	22
1.6 OUT: non-existence, ignorance, invisibility also function as containers	25
1.7 OUT: trajectors increasing to maximal boundaries	32
1.8 OUT: key	34
1.9 Expand and test your knowledge of ‘out’	37
1.10 Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘out’	41
2 IN is entering or being inside a container	48
2.1 IN: being inside or entering a container	48
2.2 IN: atmospheric circumstances as containers	51
2.3 IN: time viewed as a container	52
2.4 IN: sets or groups viewed as containers	55
2.5 IN: situations, circumstances as containers	55

2.6	IN: psychological, physical states viewed as containers	57
2.7	IN: key	60
2.8	Expand and test your knowledge of 'in'	62
2.9	Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'in''	65
3	INTO is entering a container	69
3.1	INTO: motion into a container	69
3.2	INTO: change is motion from one state into another	70
3.3	INTO: key	72
3.4	Expand and test your knowledge of 'into'	72
3.5	Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'into''	73
4	UP is positive verticality	75
4.1	UP: position at a high place or moving up to a higher one	75
4.2	UP (to): aiming at or reaching a goal, an end, a limit	77
4.3	UP: moving to a higher degree, value or measure	80
4.4	UP: higher up is more visible, accessible, known	85
4.5	UP: covering an area completely/reaching the highest limit ...	86
4.6	UP: Key	89
4.7	Expand and test your knowledge of 'up'	92
4.8	Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'up''	97
5	DOWN is negative verticality	104
5.1	DOWN: movement from a higher to a lower place	104
5.2	DOWN: time and geographically orientated motion	106
5.3	DOWN: decrease in intensity, quality, quantity, size, degree, value, activity, status, strength... ..	107
5.4	DOWN: reach a goal, completion, extreme limit down the scale	111
5.5	DOWN: movements of eating or writing	112
5.6	DOWN: key	113
5.7	Expand and test your knowledge of 'down'	115
5.8	Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'down''	118
6	OFF is breaking contact	121
6.1	OFF: loss of spatial contact or spatial separation	121
6.2	OFF: separation as loss of contact	123
6.3	OFF: separation as interruption of flow/supply	125
6.4	OFF: separation due to motion away from its former state, condition or point of reference	126
6.5	OFF: key	132

6.6	Expand and test your knowledge of ‘off’	133
6.7	Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘off’	137
7	AWAY is disappearing	139
7.1	AWAY: leaving a place or not being at it	139
7.2	AWAY: gradual and continuously growing distance	141
7.3	AWAY: complete disappearance	143
7.4	AWAY: key	144
7.5	Expand and test your knowledge of ‘away’	145
7.6	Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘away’	147
8	ON is contact	149
8.1	ON: contact or getting closer to make contact	149
8.2	ON: from contact to closeness	151
8.3	ON: time viewed as a surface	152
8.4	ON: continuation of an action or situation	153
8.5	ON: cause – effect viewed as two entities in contact	154
8.6	ON: key	156
8.7	Expand and test your knowledge of ‘on’	156
8.8	Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘on’	158
9	OVER is higher than and close to	160
9.1	OVER: being or moving higher than and close to sth or from one side to the other	160
9.2	OVER: crossing a certain distance to get closer	161
9.3	OVER: Motion viewed as covering completely or even in excess	162
9.4	OVER/UNDER: higher than/beyond or lower than/below the norm	164
9.5	OVER: examining thoroughly from all sides	167
9.6	OVER: reflexive motion or completely bent	168
9.7	OVER: key	169
9.8	Expand and test your knowledge of ‘over(-)/under-’	170
9.9	Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘over(-)/under-’	172
10	BACK is returning	173
10.1	BACK: return to or stay at an earlier location	173
10.2	BACK: Return to an earlier state, time, situation	174
10.3	BACK: key	177
10.4	Expand and test your knowledge of ‘back’	178
10.5	Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘back’	179

11 ABOUT is dispersion	180
11.1 ABOUT: location or motion in vicinity but in no particular direction	180
11.2 ABOUT: from motion on a surface to mental motion on topics	181
11.3 ABOUT: from vicinity to proximity in size, time, measure, quantity	182
11.4 ABOUT: key	183
12 (A)ROUND is vicinity or circular motion	184
12.1 (A)ROUND: Location or motion (in different directions) often viewed from a central point	184
12.2 (A)ROUND: figurative activities other than motion	185
12.3 (A)ROUND: key	186
13 ABOUT/(A)ROUND is dispersion vs. circular motion	187
13.1 ABOUT/(A)ROUND: motion along +/- circular paths in different directions	187
13.2 ABOUT/(A)ROUND: (metaphorical) paths in all kinds of directions	189
13.3 ABOUT/(A)ROUND: key	190
13.4 Expand and test your knowledge of ‘about/(a)round’	190
13.5 Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘about/(a)round’	192
14 ACROSS is motion to opposite side	193
14.1 ACROSS (preposition): motion from one side of a surface to another	193
14.2 ACROSS (particle): figurative motion crossing to a human receiver	193
14.3 ACROSS: key	194
15 THROUGH is crossing a container	195
15.1 THROUGH: motion inside an entity from end to end	195
15.2 THROUGH: activities viewed as complete(d) motions	195
15.3 THROUGH: key	198
15.4 Expand and test your knowledge of ‘through’	198
15.5 Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘through’	199
16 BY is vicinity or path	200
16.1 BY: location or motion near or at the side of an entity	200
16.2 BY: closeness or location in time and measurement units	201
16.3 BY: ‘cause – effect’, means viewed as two close objects	202
16.4 BY: key	202

17 ALONG is parallel path or entity	204
17.1 ALONG: to be/to move towards the end of sth long	204
17.2 ALONG: feelings are viewed as accompanying objects	205
17.3 ALONG: key	206

Introduction: Words and the World

Over the past decades there has been a growing awareness of the need to equip students of English with a dynamic vocabulary accompanied by a renewed interest in familiarizing them with more idiomatic aspects of the language such as, for instance, phrasal verbs, a notoriously difficult part of the lexicon.

Phrasal verbs do not enjoy a good reputation in foreign language learning. Still, they are common in spoken and written English and new ones are constantly being created. This may be due to the fact that they so clearly go from the concrete to the abstract. Because foreign learners do not see this path, many phrasal verbs are difficult to understand and to use even if they know both the verb and the spatial meaning of the particle. It is not surprising therefore that even advanced learners of English understand many of them poorly and, as research has shown, use them sparingly, if at all.

The difficulties are situated at the levels of both form and meaning.

1 The syntactic frames of phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs, also called (idiomatic) multi-word verbs, consist of a verb, an adverb (adverbial particle) and/or a preposition. Some verbs are called *prepositional verbs* since they consist of a verb and a preposition. The possible types and combinations are:

- verb + particle: *slow down, bring up, put off, give away, look into (a murder), think over*
- verb + particle + preposition: *face up to, get down to, come up with, be in for*
- verb + preposition: *refer to, look into (a room), look at, depend on, abstain from, think of*

The syntactic picture is rather complex since there are restrictions, for instance:

- on the place of the particle: the more figurative a phrasal verb is, the more it forms a tight unit, and the less verb and particle can be split. Hence, the following are not possible: **make your mind up, *make the bill up*, whereas *make up your mind, make up the bill* are correct;
- on passivizing phrasal verbs: *he blew up* is fine, but not **he was blown up by what I said*. Only when there is a flow of energy from an agent to an object can they be used in the passive: *The bill was made up in a minute* is fine, but not **His mind was made up in a minute*.

Thus, knowledge of these frames is important if one wants to use phrasal verbs correctly.

The most important problem with phrasal verbs, however, is that those restrictions are motivated by the meanings of the verb and the particle and the composite meaning of the whole.

Many particles can also function as prefixes/suffixes with nouns or adjectives; in this case they have similar meanings as with verbs: *outlook, output, cutback, upbringing, offprint; be backward, be overwhelmed, be standoffish, a downright lie, an uptight person*, etc.

2 The meaning of phrasal verbs

2.1 The meaning of the verb

Apart from a few static verbs such as *be, sit, hold*, etc. almost all verbs used with particles are verbs of motion. The motion can be physical and can be performed, for example, with one's hands and legs (*wipe, drag, break, throw; walk, run, jump, climb*) or abstract (*think, sell, buy, refer*). Furthermore, since it is easier to talk about abstract actions by seeing them as concrete movements (cf. *infra*), most of these verbs of motion can and will also be used to designate abstract, non-visible changes:

(A) physical, spatial motion	→	(B) abstract motion
1a to <i>drag</i> a person <i>out of</i> the house		1b the meeting <i>dragged on/dragged out</i>
2a to <i>run up</i> the hill		2b to <i>run up</i> expenses; – against opposition
3a to <i>throw out</i> old clothes, shoes		3b to <i>throw</i> a person <i>out of</i> a club
4a to <i>get out of</i> the house		4b to <i>get out of</i> the mess/the problems
5a to <i>run out of</i> a building on fire		5b to <i>run out of</i> money; my pen has <i>run out</i>
6a to <i>run off</i> the edge of a crevasse		6b to <i>run off</i> 100 copies of an ad(vertisement)
7a to <i>skim off</i> the cream (from the milk)		7b to <i>skim through</i> (a book, a document)

Glosses: **1a** to pull sb along with great effort, difficulty – **1b** lasted a long time – **2b** to accumulate, increase; to encounter, face opposition – **4b** a difficult, unpleasant state, situation – **5b** to have no more money; have no ink in the pen any more – **6a** to run away from the outside limit of a deep open crack – **6b** to make copies, to photocopy – **7a** to take away the cream from the surface of the milk – **7b** to read a book very quickly paying attention only to the most important things

As can be seen from the above examples, it is clear that in order to understand a phrasal verb one has to understand the meaning of the verbs *drag, run, throw, get, run, wipe, skim*, etc. But this is, however, not always sufficient.

2.2 The meaning of the particles

In many cases, the second and in fact major problem with phrasal verbs and compounds is gaining insight into the meaning(s) of their particles and understanding why one particle is used and not another one. The moot question is whether particles are purely 'idiomatic' or whether they rather consist of clusters of related and transparent meanings. As yet, such questions have mostly remained unanswered in learning English as a foreign language, and as a result many phrasal verbs are called 'idiomatic', i.e. they are said to be impossible to understand on the basis of their constituting elements, verb and particle. All these so-called 'idiomatic' phrasal verbs would therefore have to be learned one by one, an arduous, time-consuming and not very rational task. It is no wonder then that even advanced students often show a poor command of phrasal verbs and use them rarely.

2.2.1 Spatial, prototypical or basic meanings of prepositions and particles

If the meaning of the verb is known and if the meaning of the particle is *spatial*, the phrasal verb is generally easy to understand:

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1 Do you know there is petrol <i>leaking out of</i> your tank? | <i>coming, flowing out</i> |
| 2 The children <i>ran up</i> the hill to attack the enemy. | |
| 3 <i>Wipe</i> the dirt <i>off</i> your face. | <i>remove, take away</i> |

Prepositions can also be used as particles:

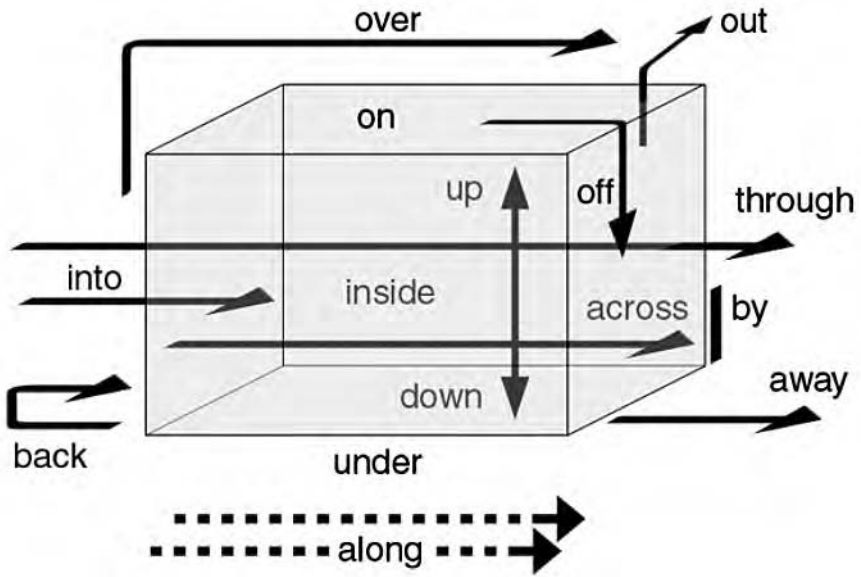
- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1 The secret has <i>leaked out</i> . | |
| 2 He <i>ran up</i> a heavy bill. | <i>accumulated</i> |
| 3 He <i>wiped</i> the event <i>off</i> his memory. | <i>removed completely</i> |

It may still be mentioned here that *away*, *back* and *out* cannot be used as prepositions.

The spatial, prototypical meaning of the most frequent prepositions/particles can be illustrated as follows (see figure next page):

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1 My friend lives ... the street. | <i>across</i> |
| 2 The walk ... the river was very pleasant. | <i>along</i> |
| 3 The restaurant is only two minutes ... from here. | <i>away</i> |
| 4 Could you give me ... the book I lent you months ago? | <i>back</i> |
| 5 Their house is ... the church. | <i>by</i> |

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 6 The ball rolled ... the hill. | <i>down</i> |
| 7 I think that John is ... his room. | <i>in</i> |
| 8 Due to a hoax call visitors were not allowed to stay ... the museum. | <i>inside</i> |
| 9 We could not go ... the castle. | <i>into</i> |
| 10 Two plates fell ... the table. | <i>off</i> |
| 11 Could we not hang the picture ... the wall opposite the entrance? | <i>on</i> |
| 12 'Ladies and gentlemen, we are now flying ... the North Pole'. | <i>over</i> |
| 13 The train was going ... the mountain. | <i>through</i> |
| 14 The dog was lying ... the chair. | <i>under</i> |
| 15 Take the stairs, the lift doesn't go ... anymore. | <i>up</i> |



2.2.2 Metaphorical or extended meanings of the particles

The most frequently encountered problem occurs, however, when particles are used *metaphorically*, i.e. when their literal meanings are extended to *abstract*, non-visible domains such as *thoughts, intentions, feelings, attitudes, relations, social and economic interaction*, etc. The non-spatial meaning of verbs such as *wipe out, wear off* are therefore far from obvious for second-language learners of English, even if they know the basic or literal meaning(s) of the verbs:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 In the Middle Ages epidemics
<i>wiped out</i> whole cities. | <i>destroyed completely</i> |
| 2 As predicted John's initial
enthusiasm <i>wore off</i> fast. | (<i>< wear off</i>) <i>diminished</i> |
| 3 As students we <i>looked up to</i> our
biology teacher. | <i>we admired, were full of respect for</i> |
| 4 Tell me, who are you <i>to look down</i>
<i>on</i> us? | <i>to despise, look with contempt at us</i> |
| 5 We <i>ran out of</i> milk when the guests
arrived. | <i>we were without milk</i> |

2.3 The metaphorical meaning of the whole expression 'verb + particle'

In some cases, it is not enough to know the separate meanings of a verb and a particle to understand the meaning of the phrasal verb resulting from combining both. In the following sentences, the verbs *turn*, *pick* and *put* have a different meaning from the one they have when used with a concrete meaning as in *turn the inside out*, *pick up an object from the floor* or *put sth on the stove*:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 It <i>turned out</i> that what he said was
not true. | <i>it was discovered, it became clear</i> |
| 2 Business is <i>picking up</i> . | <i>is improving, becoming better</i> |
| 3 For several reasons the meeting was
<i>put off</i> . | <i>was cancelled, postponed</i> |

But even with such abstract meanings, there is a far link with the original spatial meaning: *turn out* 'become clear, known' relates to what was formerly *hidden* in the container, *pick up* 'improve' to what was formerly *down*, and *put off* 'postpone' what was formerly '*on the agenda*'.

2.4 A phrasal verb with one particle often has several meanings

Finally, it should be pointed out that with many common phrasal verbs one single particle has several 'different' meanings. On the surface these may look like totally unrelated meanings. Once, however, you gain an insight into the literal and extended or metaphorical meanings of a particle, these 'different meanings' turn out to be closely related. Let's look more closely at **up** in **pick up**:

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Could you <i>pick up</i> the spoon
the baby has dropped. | <i>to lift from the floor (spatial)</i> |
| 2 | The beggar was <i>picked up</i> from
the street. | <i>he was taken by the police</i> |
| 3 | Can you <i>pick me up</i> at 6:30 at
the station? | <i>fetch, collect me by car</i> |
| 4 | I don't know where I <i>picked up</i>
this cold/flu. | <i>caught < catch, got</i> |
| 5 | She <i>picks up</i> foreign languages in
no time. | <i>she learns, very fast</i> |
| 6 | Trade has <i>picked up</i> over the last
few months. | <i>has increased, is higher (figurative)</i> |

The verb **pick** has as its basic meaning 'choose, fetch, take, move' which, joined to *up*, leads to blending the basic meaning into the network of related meanings: moving higher up, make more visible, getting closer to a goal, etc. Cf. the **up**-section.

But before turning to the analysis of the networks of meaning(s) constituted by the particles and the verbs they combine with, it may be useful to look briefly at what language is used for and how it goes about achieving these aims.

3 What do we use language for?

Language allows us to impose order on the world by categorizing or grouping its phenomena into categories or concepts. Thus, certain languages distinguish between animate and inanimate entities, others between human and what is not human, still others between masculine and feminine entities, between small and tall things, between past, present or future events, between events one has witnessed oneself or only heard about, etc.

Conceptual metaphors

The basic question is: how are we able to talk about abstractions or non-observable things like *time, emotions, social relations, interactions, thoughts*, etc., things we cannot see except when they have external consequences? There is usually only one way, namely to see them the way we see concrete objects. Such viewing processes are **metaphors**. Language is essentially metaphorical

since it uses thousands of expressions based on concrete, physical entities in order to express high-level abstractions.

Thanks to the awareness that languages use metaphors, we may readily understand expressions such as:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 She <i>covered</i> herself with glory. | <i>the way one covers oneself with a coat</i> |
| 2 The country was in the dictator's <i>grip</i> . | <i>as if he held the country in his fist</i> |
| 3 How did the news <i>leak out</i> ? | <i>the way a liquid comes out of a hole in a container</i> |
| 4 He is <i>full of</i> himself. | <i>he is thinking only of himself</i> |
| 5 We were given an <i>icy</i> >< a warm welcome. | <i>very unfriendly</i> >< <i>friendly</i> |
| 6 I have <i>hot</i> news on <i>this burning issue</i> . | <i>very recent news on an exciting point</i> |
| 7 His rude behaviour made my blood <i>boil</i> . | <i>caused extreme anger, agitation in me</i> |

In each of the above sentences, we conceive and characterize an abstract reality in terms of a concrete one. And when we talk about our feelings, convictions, fears, hopes, suspicions, relations, we tend to use similar concrete images.

Thus, English phrasal verbs, especially by the metaphorical use of the particle, enable us to conceive of several *abstract* domains in terms of *concrete* domains. We can use this typical transfer from concrete to abstract motion in order to do a number of things:

1 to express the constant changes in and around us:

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 Miniskirts seem to <i>be in</i> again this year. | <i>seem to be popular</i> |
| 2 Small shops have been <i>priced out</i> by supermarkets. | <i>have been unable to compete</i> |
| 3 We first have to <i>test out</i> the method. | <i>examine, check</i> |

2 to view people and their bodies (mouths, minds) as containers:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 He <i>is full of</i> himself. | <i>he is only thinking about himself</i> |
| 2 He must <i>be out of his mind</i> to say that. | <i>he must be crazy</i> |
| 3 He <i>blew up</i> when I told him that he was wrong. | <i>he got very angry/exploded</i> |

3 to evaluate feelings on the verticality axis ('up' is good, 'down' is bad):

- 1 I cannot go to school, I *am down* with flu. *I'm ill, I have influenza*
- 2 We all have *ups and downs* in life. *good (up)/bad (down) moments*
- 3 I *feel down* now my girlfriend has left me. *I feel unhappy*

4 to express degrees of intensity as a scale of temperatures:

- 1 With the elections *getting near* politicians are *warming up*. *are becoming more lively, excited*
- 2 The discussion *heated up* and ended in a fight. *became intense; finished by*
- 3 Their relations *cooled off* quite quickly. *'good' relations = "warm"*

5 to view and express human relations in terms of confrontation/fighting:

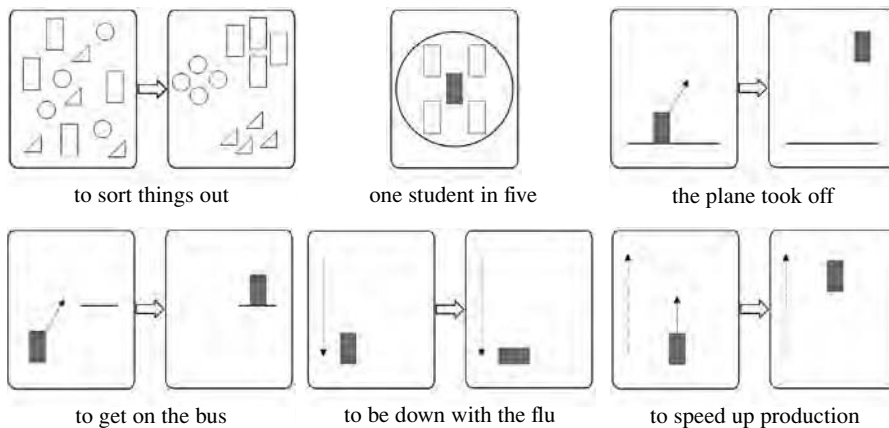
- 1 We first have to *straighten out* this problem. *like a bump on a straight surface*
- 2 She *outclassed* all her competitors. *was better = 'outside' the group*
- 3 You have to *fight back* if you want to survive. *to react with strength, force*

4 How do we perceive and conceive reality?

Examine the drawings which visualize the meaning of different phrasal verbs or verbs with prepositions.

Each of these drawings is a schema, i.e. a mental representation of a spatial relation such as being *in* or *out of* a container, having contact with, or being somewhere on a vertical scale.

- 1 to *sort things out*: the different things are in disorder in one set (left schema); clear sets, each with objects with identical shapes, are *sorted out of* this disorderly mass of objects
- 2 *one student in five*: a set of five students is viewed as a container; when one of them is picked out, (s)he corresponds to special criteria



- 3 the plane *took off*: the plane was first on the ground and then lost contact with it (off) and went into the air
- 4 to *get on* the bus: the person was outside the bus and stepped *onto* the bus making contact with it (on)
- 5 to *be down with* flu: when one has flu, one is weaker, one has often to go to bed and lie down
- 6 to *speed up* production: the production is higher (up), is increased; more items are being produced than before

N.B. Notice that the symbols used for representing parts of the phrasal verbs are ‘abstract’ because they refer not only to concrete domains such as people or objects but also to abstract domains such as emotions, thoughts, situations, states, etc.

4.1 The trajector and landmark: the moving entity and the place (point, container, surface) where it moves

In-depth understanding of, or insight into, the particles *up*, *down*, *out*, *along*, *by*, etc. will considerably shorten the time needed to master even difficult or abstract phrasal verbs. But in order to understand the schemata or drawings, learners have to be familiar with two notions that are at the basis of our perception of the world: we unconsciously foreground or focus on a (moving) entity and view it against a background seen as container or surface.

The moving entity focused on is called *trajector* whereas the container or surface which serves as the background is called *landmark*. These are illustrated in the following sentences:

	moving entity	point/container/surface
	trajector	landmark
– John went home.	John	home
– The plane managed to land on the runway.	plane	runway
– The lamp is hooked on the ceiling.	lamp	ceiling
– There is a fly on the wall.	fly	wall
– He put his handkerchief in his pocket.	handkerchief	pocket
– Ten convicts broke out of the prison.	convicts	prison

The foregrounded entity is trajector: This entity is an object, a person, but also a feeling, a thought; in fact, *any* entity on which our attention focuses. It is generally smaller, flexible and moving.

We associate it or localise it with respect to another (bigger) fixed object or place: the landmark, which we conceive as a container or surface.

The background point/container/surface is landmark: The *point/container/surface* or landmark is often a physical thing. It is generally bigger, immobile, easier to identify than the smaller or moving trajector and it often serves as a point of reference or background to localize the smaller entity if the latter is an abstract one.

In order to better understand the characteristics of the foregrounded, moving entity and the backgrounded entity (point/container/surface), just read the following impossible sentences in which the conventional backgrounds have been turned into foregrounded figures:

	foregrounded entity	background entity
	trajector	landmark
1 *The home is around John.	home	John
2 *The wall is behind the fly.	wall	fly
3 *The tree is leaning against the bicycle.	tree	bicycle
4 *The pocket is around the handkerchief.	handkerchief	pocket
5 *The prison is no longer around the ten convicts.	prison	convicts

(the asterisk (*) means that the sentence is bizarre, not to say incorrect)

It is because the trajectors (moving entities) and the landmarks (points/containers/surfaces) have been inverted that the sentences are strange or even incorrect since they violate the conventional laws governing our perception of the world.

Note that abstract entities and points/containers/surfaces are not always clearly defined or easily perceived. In fact it is not absolutely necessary to identify them in order to fully grasp the meaning of an unknown phrasal verb. Never-

theless, giving explicit attention to identifying the two components may contribute in a major way to committing to memory the meaning of the phrasal verb.

4.2 Symbols used in the drawings



A big rectangle represents the visual field



A small, black standing or lying rectangle represents the trajector which may be an object, a feeling, a thought, etc.

Landmarks (points/containers/surfaces) can take any of the following forms:



a) a white rectangle (which is bigger than the trajector) represents a container



b) a vertical or horizontal line represents a surface or an object to which the trajector is related



c) a group or set of entities (objects, animals or people)



d) a fluctuating mass, a landmark without precise limits (the air, our environment)



A dotted arrow indicates the movement of the trajector/moving entity and the impact it can have on the landmark



A line with an arrow indicates a scale along which the trajector moves or is located

4.3 Questions on the Introduction

1 What are the elements that make up phrasal verbs or prepositional verbs?

2 What is 'an idiom' or 'an idiomatic expression'?

3 Give a few examples of (a) concrete movements and of (b) abstract movements expressed by *drag out (of)*, *run up*, *get out (of)*, *run off*.

4 Which of the following words are used in (a) a literal, spatial meaning, and (b) in an abstract, figurative or metaphorical meaning?

a full cup, a full bottle; a full hour, full time; full of vitality; at full speed; a warm/cold/icy welcome; to hide the truth; the soup boiled over; the discussion heated up; John blew up; Jane was down in the cellar; Jane was down with the flu.

5 Give a few examples of *abstract* things, i.e. things which we cannot feel, see or touch.

6 Illustrate (using examples) how one single phrasal verb like *pick up* has different (related) meanings.

7 Identify the trajectors (moving entities) and landmarks (points/containers/surfaces) in the following sentences:

1. My friend will be waiting at the station. – 2. The lamp fell off the ceiling. – 3. The swimmer crawled out of the water. – 4. There was an interesting article in the yesterday newspaper.

8 Explain why the following sentences are odd and correct them.

1. *The swimming pool is around the swimmer. – 2. *The wall is leaning against the bicycle. – 3. *The house is underneath the roof.

9 Replace the following verbs/expressions by phrasal verbs or expressions with particles:

- 1 to be popular
- 2 to be crazy
- 3 to explode/get very angry
- 4 to be or look very tired
- 5 to increase production

6 to settle a problem	.....
7 to have (the) flu	.....
8 to be better than others	.....
9 to go quickly through a book	.....
10 not to have any more money	.....

Choose among the following: 1 to be down with – 2 to outclass – 3 to be in – 4 to blow up – 5 to straighten out – 6 to skim through – 7 to run out of – 8 to be worn out – 9 to speed up – 10 to be out of one’s mind

1 OUT is leaving a container

Out is, after **up**, the most frequently used particle/prefix/suffix in English. It combines with several hundred distinct verbs; most verbs express motion. In this section there are some 180 instances of phrasal verbs or compounds (outcome, outskirts, etc.) with **out**.

Out can function as a verbal particle (e.g. *Hang out the washing/Hang the washing out.*) or, in combination with **of**, as a preposition (e.g. *They rushed out of the house*). Typically, i.e. spatially, it includes in its meaning the concept of a container and an object which moves *out of* the container.

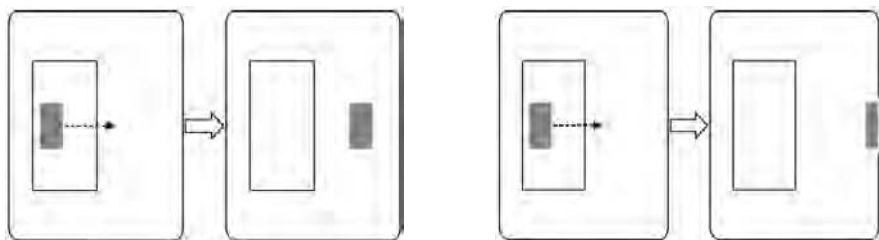
The container/surface/landmark may be whatever surrounds a given entity/trajector that moves *out of* it; note the following:

- an enclosure, a building, a room, a car, a cup, a pot, a nest, a hole, a shell, a tunnel, an outer cover, a field or any other enclosed area;
- a substance (liquid or solid), e.g. water, wood, rock or earth;
- a set or group of objects, animals or people;
- our body, mind.

1.1 OUT: entities moving out of containers

Home activity

Look at the following schemata or drawings which visualize the prototypical or basic meanings expressed by **verb constructions + out**, i.e. an entity/a trajector (the small black rectangle) moving *out of* a landmark/container (the big white rectangle). These drawings are intentionally abstract since they represent any landmark and any trajector. These schemata will help you to visualize your own schemata when going through completely different sentences.



cut out – flew out of – hang out – jumped out – jumped out of – knocked out – lean out of – let ... out/put ... out – ran/stormed out of – sent ... out – sprang out of – throw out – watch out

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 The accident happened as he the train while it was still moving. | j..... |
| 2 She bed when the alarm clock rang. | spr..... |
| 3 They decided to most of their old clothes. | thr |
| 4 When the fire broke out, people / the building. | r...../st..... |
| 5 Could you ... the cat .../... the cat ... at night? | l...../p..... |
| 6 Mother ... the boy ... to buy something to eat. | s |
| 7 Teenagers like to articles about their idols. | c |
| 8 The businessman Heathrow airport. | fl..... |
| 9 The sign says it's dangerous to the window. | l..... |
| 10 the washing, it will be dry in no time. | H |
| 11 As the fire was spreading, we a window and | kn..... /j..... |
| 12: there is a car coming! | W |

Glosses: **4** *broke out* (< *break out*): *started* – **5** *at night: in the evening* – **6** *sent him to the shop* – **7** *teenagers: youngsters between thirteen and eighteen; cut out with scissors; idols: people/stars that are admired by youngsters* – **10** *in no time: very quickly* – **11** *as: since; spreading: as the fire was getting bigger, covering more surface* – **12** *watch out: look quickly and carefully around, usually for some potential danger*

Suggestions for oral creative classroom activities in pairs or small groups

After completing the verbs to the right of the sentences (individually and preferably at home), you may want to anchor your knowledge of the linguistic material in the exetext further and choose among the following activities:

- paraphrase, explain, give synonyms of any words (not only verbs) you were not very familiar with; use the glosses wherever necessary;
- cover up the verbs and read the sentences aloud while completing (the blanks with) the verbs;
- cover up the sentences and create similar or different new sentences in which the verbs fit;
- identify in some of the above sentences: (1) the different trajectors/entities that *move out of* the landmarks/containers, and (2) the containers the trajectors move out of;

- show how different the containers are even if they are spatial (concrete) as in sentences 1 through 11. But also examine why **out** is used in (12): ‘**watch out (for)**’ with the meaning ‘look carefully around, *beyond, outside your usual field of vision*, for a potential danger’;
the question then is: is there a reason for using **out** in this context? Or, is **out** meaningless and superfluous? In other words: does the sentence “*Watch, there is a car coming*” mean exactly the same as “*Watch out, there is a car coming*”?
- explain how the verbs specify different ways of moving: *fly, jump, send, spring, watch*, etc., and how the specific meaning *out* adds to the meaning of the verb;
- indicate in which sentences **out** follows the trajector/entity;
- pick out the sentences in which the landmarks (point, containers/surfaces) are not specified;
- wherever possible drop the landmark (point/container/surface) where it is mentioned and add one of your own where it is not specified.

Exetext 1

broke out of – climb out of – come out – got ... out of – jump out of – looks out of – pour ... out – shook out – squeeze ... out of – take out

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 Several convicts/inmates the main prison last night. | br |
| 2 He barely managed to the car when it caught fire. | j |
| 3 He the window all day long because he has nothing to do. | l |
| 4 Shall I ... the coffee ... now or should I wait? | p |
| 5 She found the diamond she lost when she the carpet. | sh |
| 6 The crew helped the survivors to the rescue boats. | cl |
| 7 Could you ... the juice this lemon? | sq |
| 8 With this new detergent all the dirty marks beautifully. | c |
| 9 I must say that in terms of English I ... the maximum my stay in Britain. | g |
| 10 Before leaving it would be wise to an insurance policy. | t |

Glosses: 1 prisoners; escaped from – 2 barely: hardly, only just succeeded in jumping; caught fire < catch – 4 pour ... out: serve – 6 crew: the team of people working on a plane or ship; rescue boats: small boats to bring people to safety – 7 press from all sides with one’s fingers – 8 detergent: powder or liquid that removes dirt; marks: spots,

stains – 9 got ... out of: benefitted maximally from – 10 to sign a contract (with an insurance company) guaranteeing that you are insured/covered against all kinds of misfortunes, accidents, calamities

Exetest 2

growing out of – keep ... out of – locked ... out – rinse out – rush out of/dash out of – set out/started out – sneak out of/slip out of – turn out – wring out

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 1 Why did he /... .. the room? Was there an emergency? | r...../d..... |
| 2 How did he manage to the hall? | sn ...../sl..... |
| 3 Before coming in please your wet socks. | wr..... |
| 4 Don't forget to the bottle before filling it again. | r..... |
| 5 When I got to the customs I had to all of my pockets. | t..... |
| 6 The explorers /... .. at 5 o'clock in the morning. | s ...../st..... |
| 7 I left the key in the house and ... myself | l..... |
| 8 Our daughter is rapidly her clothes. | gr..... |
| 9 You have to ... the children the flower beds. | k..... |

Glosses: **1** dash out: leave a place very suddenly and quickly – **2** sneak out: leave without being noticed – **3** squeeze and twist so that the water comes out – **4** rinse: wash with clean water – **5** customs: the department (at the border) that collects taxes; turn out: show the inside, empty – **6** left (< leave)/began their trip – **7** I could not open the door and enter – **8** she is becoming too big for – **9** prevent them from entering the beds with flowers

You will increase your *word power* best by focusing on whatever is new or not well known yet and hooking it up/linking it up with other words: *to rinse out a container, to sneak out/to slip out of a building, to wring out a wet towel, to keep out of a place, to turn out one's pockets, etc.*

Exetest 3

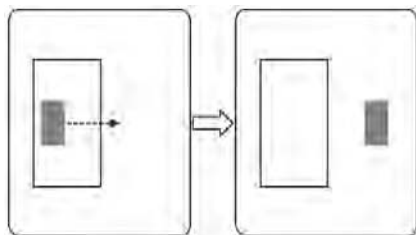
are out of – check out of – driven out of – lent out – left out – pushed ... out (of) – rushed out of – scrub ... out – slid out of – wiped ... out

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 The robber almost knocked me down as he the bank. | r..... |
| 2 The rebels were the country within a week. | dr..... |
| 3 I wanted to talk to the boss, but he just ... me ... (... his office). | p..... |
| 4 I am so sorry I broke the plate, but it just my hands. | sl |

- 5 We sugar; could you buy some on your way back? a.....
- 6 Usually guests should (... a hotel) before ten o'clock. ch.....
- 7 How long would it take us to ... the hall ...? scr.....
- 8 The museum has its best paintings for an exhibition abroad. l
- 9 One hypothesis is that the dinosaurs were by a meteor. w.....
- 10 You one extremely important point (in your letter). l

Glosses: 1 left in a hurry, ran away – 2 driven out of (< drive): kicked out with force – 3 forced me to leave the office quickly – 4 slid out of (< slide): slipped out of – 5 we are without, have no more sugar – 6 leave – 7 clean thoroughly with a brush, water and soap – 8 lent out (< lend): given for a certain time – 9 wiped out: all killed, destroyed – 10 did not put in

1.2 OUT: eat or inviting to eat away from home



Often verbs with **out** have a specific meaning in addition to motion in space. This is related to personal or social treatment, friendly or unfriendly.

ask ... out – eat out – invite ... out – ousted ... out of – take ... out – threw ... out of

- (a) I would like to ... you ... to lunch. a.....
- ... you ... (to a meal). t
- I ... you ... to the party we are organizing this Friday. i
- I might with you tonight, but unfortunately I can't. ea.....
- (b) His wife ... him the house. thr
- The committee ... him the club/the office. ou

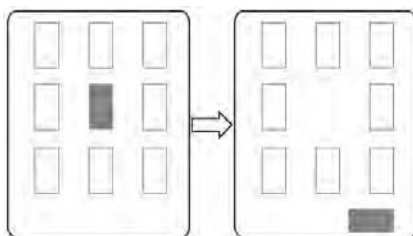
The (a) sentences mean 'to eat somewhere other than at one's house, usually in a restaurant';

The (b) sentences mean ‘to cause somebody to lose his home/club membership/job.

Glosses: (b) *throw out*: force to leave; *ousted*: removed as a member, kicked out of

Our home, the groups we are members of, our professional jobs are viewed as containers in(side) which we spend a lot of time. It is therefore normal that we use **out** once we move *out of* them.

1.3 OUT: sets, groups are containers



came out of / (was) *cut out of* – *count ... out* – *cross out* – *find out* – *kicked out of* – *out of* – *picked out* – *set ... out* – *sort out* – *spaced ... out*

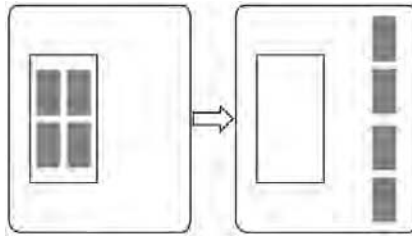
- 1 Begin to the problems you can do something about now. s
- 2 ... the flowers ... in a line, six inches apart. S.....
- 3 The dinosaurs ... their nests ... to avoid crushing the eggs. sp
- 4 She the most expensive dress in the shop. p.....
- 5 How can we the reasons for his strange behaviour? f.....
- 6 That article /was yesterday’s paper. c/c.....
- 7 Two players were the game for repeated foul play. k.....
- 8 the word that does not fit in each series. Cr.....
- 9 If you accept this offer, you are the biggest idiot them all. ou.....
- 10 ... me ..., I’m afraid: I won’t be able to come to your party. C

Glosses: **1** *sort out*: arrange in groups or sets according to their common features – **2** *arrange, place them with a space in between them* – **3** *to avoid damaging the eggs by stepping on them* – **4** *chose (< choose)* – **7** *for rough, dirty and violent play* – **8** *draw a line through the word* – **9** (+ superlative: *biggest*) *understood: (out) of all existing idiots* – **10** *do not include me among the group of guests*

Sets or groups (of objects, people) are viewed as containers inside which there are members or elements. In some cases members can be rearranged or given a new position, in others the member does not remain inside the set or group and it moves **out** (of it).

- Ex. 1 **sorting out:** begin by removing from the whole group of problems, by setting apart the ones you can do sth about
 10 **Count ... out:** remove me from the group, put me outside of the group of the guests

1.4 OUT: bodies, minds, mouths are viewed as containers



deal out – handed out/gave out – held out – look out – pulling out/taking out – reached out – stammer out – stuck out – thought out – was out of

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 He his mind and behaved like a madman. | w..... |
| 2 The dentist suggested the decayed tooth. | p ...../t..... |
| 3 The little girl her tongue at the old lady. | st..... |
| 4 He his hand to greet us. | h |
| 5 She to greet us. | r |
| 6 The teacher the examination papers. | h ...../g |
| 7 She was so clever, she always a solution to the problem. | th |
| 8 Whose turn is it to the cards? Mine perhaps? | d |
| 9 He was so moved he could barely a few words of thanks. | st..... |
| 10 and see if the children are coming back from school. | L..... |

Glosses: 1 was very angry, mad; behaved like an idiot – 2 decayed: bad, rotten tooth – 3 showed – 4 (< stick) stretched out, gave – 6 distributed – 7 considered, discovered a method to solve – 9 barely: only just; speaking with many pauses between words

In Western cultures, a person's body or his mind can be seen as a container, and one's *feelings, thoughts, ideas* as entities which fill the container. Expressing (verbally) one's feelings is very much like taking *money out of one's pocket*. In both cases, the moving object which is inside the container (one's pockets, one's mind) moves **out of** it and can therefore be linked to one and the same image.

In pairs or groups, take turns to paraphrase a certain number of words and explain how the *verbs + out* instantiate the meanings above.

Ex. 4 **stuck out**: usually our hands are along, against our body; if you stretch out one hand it gets so to say *outside* our body, this imaginary container
 9 thoughts, words are inside, when you make them come out (by stammering, for example) they come out of your mind/body

Exetext 4

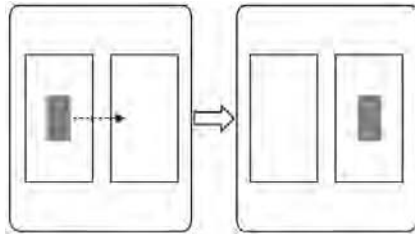
bellowed/thundered/yelled out – cried out against – cry ... out – hear ... out – have ... out – poured out – screamed out/shouted/yelled out – sob out – speak out against

- | | |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1 Perhaps the best way to deal with one's grief is to ... it | cr..... |
| 2 Before condemning Mary let's first ... her | h..... |
| 3 You should ... it ... with her. | h..... |
| 4 There were many angry people to the abortion law. | sp..... |
| 5 The demonstrators the brutal action of the police. | cr..... |
| 6 The wounded soldier for help but to no avail. | scr...../sh...../y... |
| 7 The sergeant .../.../... .. orders to the frightened soldiers. | b...../th...../y... |
| 8 It did her a lot of good to be able to her grief on his shoulder. | s..... |
| 9 He his heart to her. | p..... |

Glosses: 1 deal with: to cope; handle one's sorrow, sadness, distress – 2 listen without interrupting to what she has to say – 3 say everything that bothers you – 4 who opposed in an open, courageous way – 5 shouted, complained loud against – 6 screamed: shouted in a high-pitched way; yelled: gave a sharp and very loud cry; to no avail: without any result – 7 bellowed: made loud, angry noises as made by a bull; thundered: made noises similar to the ones made by a thunder – 8 sob: to cry in a noisy way while breathing in short breaths – 9 he told her everything that bothered him

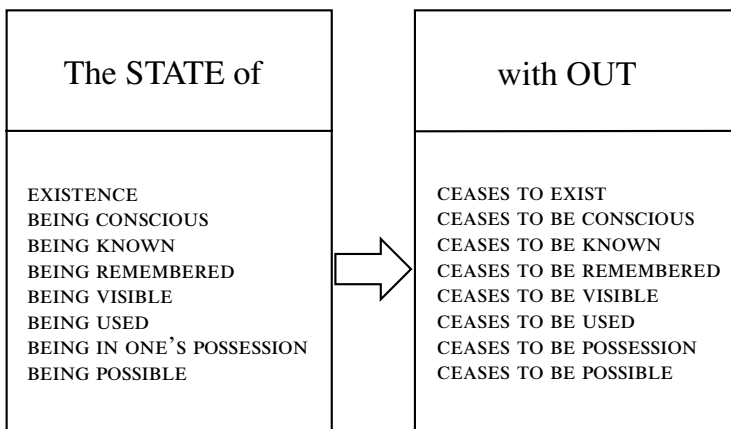
Taking into account the shape of the cavity of the mouth and the sound of the voice that comes *out of* it, it is normal that **out** can be used with many *verbs of speaking*.

1.5 OUT: states/situations are containers



As pointed out in the introduction, we can often only talk about abstract entities or relations in concrete terms. This applies to the domains of *time, emotions, thoughts, language, social relations*. This also explains why we necessarily make a container of *any state or situation* in which an object (person or thing) may be. Therefore, *states of existence, work, duty, knowledge, consciousness or awareness, possession, accessibility, visibility*, etc. are seen as entities with boundaries around them, i.e. as containers. For similar perceptions of phrasal verbs as containers, cf. **in, into**.

We can therefore establish the following general principle:



are out of – blot ... out of – hammered out/talked out – knocked out – put ... out – ran out of – talk ... out of – talked ... out of/tricked ... out of – went out – went out of – wiped out – worn out

- | | |
|---|----------------|
| 1 As our friends time and money, they couldn't visit London. | r..... |
| 2 During World War II the Nazis nearly the Jews. | w |
| 3 In the third round the heavyweight champion was | kn..... |
| 4 The anaesthetic ... her ... for several hours. | p..... |
| 5 Straw hats fashion nowadays. | a |
| 6 This expression use a long time ago. | w |
| 7 Suddenly there was an explosion and all the lights w... .. . | w |
| 8 We often try to ... unpleasant events our memory. | bl..... |
| 9 You need new shoes: these are completely | w |
| 10 She managed to ... him this stupid project. | t..... |
| 11 It is high time the two parties their differences and made peace. | h..... /t..... |
| 12 The cunning salesman .../... the old little lady her savings. | t...../tr..... |

Glosses: **1** got short of/had too little time left – **2** almost completely destroyed, killed – **4** made her lose consciousness, made her faint – **5** are no longer 'in' or popular – **8** blot out: forget about them, remove from memory, the way you blot a spot of ink out of a sheet of paper – **9** they are so used that they cannot be worn any more – **10** she succeeded in changing his mind – **11** try very hard to settle their problems and make them cease – **12** cunning: clever at telling lies, at deceiving; talked out/tricked out: persuaded the lady by lies and false promises to give him her savings (the money she had saved)

In groups or pairs, and on top of the other more basic activities (p. VIII), explain/justify the use of **out**.

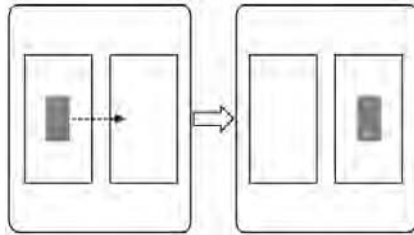
- Ex. 1 Time/money were no longer in their possession, they **ran/were out of** their possession (viewed as a container)
- 2 Due to the action of the Nazis the Jews almost ceased to exist; they were nearly **wiped out** of existence

Exetest 5: Replace the expressions in italics by phrasal verbs with *out*.

black out – cancel out of – chickened out – cop out on – died out – dropped out of – forced ... out of – knocked ... out – petered out – put out – put out/turn out – ruled out – searches out

- 1 He *stopped going to school*. dr
- 2 There's a programme that *looks for* spelling errors. s
- 3 The fire was *extinguished* in no time/very fast. p
- 4 During the war we had to *keep* all the windows *dark*. bl
- 5 Please *switch off* the light. p..... /t.....
- 6 He has no relatives. His whole family *no longer exists*. d.....
- 7 The violent blow *caused him to lose consciousness*. kn.....
- 8 The storm *diminished gradually in force and died down*. p.....
- 9 Sabotage in the plane crash was *excluded*. r
- 10 I'm sorry, but I *am unable to keep* our dinner engagement. I have to c
- 11 John promised to help, but at the last minute he *did not*. ch.....
- 12 Don't *abandon* me now, Jeff, I badly need your help. c.....
- 13 His colleagues were so fed up with him that they *obliged him to quit* work. f

1.6 OUT: non-existence, ignorance, invisibility also function as containers



Match the expressions in *italics* using appropriate verbs with **out**.

bring out – carry out – come out of/get out of – fill out/make out – find out – make out (3x) – point out – put out/turn out – sound out – work out – write out

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1 to <i>produce</i> washing machines | to p...../t..... |
| 2 to <i>be released from</i> prison | to c...../g..... |
| 3 to <i>write in full</i> (a report, a cheque) | to wr..... |
| 4 to <i>discover, learn by inquiry</i> what happened | to f..... |
| 5 to <i>try to learn somebody's opinion, feelings</i> | to s..... |
| 6 to <i>show, call attention to</i> mistakes | to p..... |
| 7 to <i>manage, to survive, to get along with sb</i> | to m..... |
| 8 to <i>develop</i> a better method, approach | to w..... |
| 9 to <i>complete</i> a document, a form, an application | to f...../m..... |
| 10 to <i>generate</i> the best in a person | to br..... |
| 11 to <i>realize</i> a plan | to c..... |
| 12 to <i>understand sb's</i> reasons, what sb says | to m..... |
| 13 to <i>plan/program</i> a course of action | to m..... |

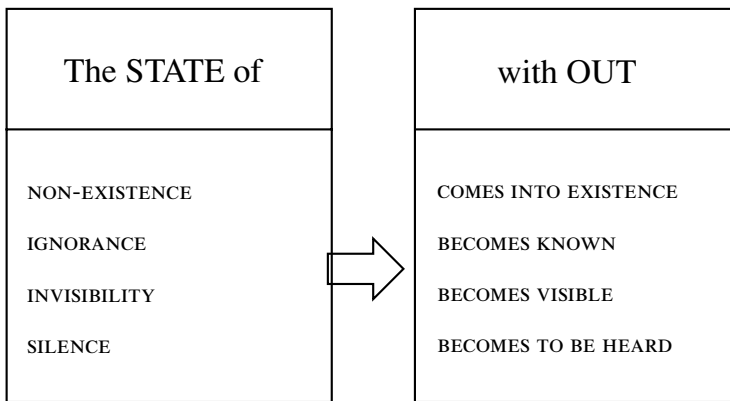
Interestingly, the (abstract) states of *non-existence* or of *being unknown/invisible/silent*, etc. can also be conceptualized as containers, and in order to express the fact that an object *moves out of* these states, we will use the particle **out**.

In pairs:

pick out a few verbs with **out** and show how they express the features mentioned in the title.

- Ex.1 the machines did not exist, but when they began manufacturing them they were **put out/turned out** by the thousands
- 2 by **coming out/getting out of prison** a person resumes normal social life/existence
- 3 the report or the cheque did not *exist* as long as they were not **written out**

The following diagram illustrates such abstract cases.



Exetest 6: Associate the phrasal verbs with their appropriate contexts.

broke out – burst out – came out (4x) – comes out – figured out – gave out – leaked out – pointed out – turned out (2x) – worked out

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------|---------|
| 1 Nobody knows as yet how the secret | <i>became known</i> | l |
| 2 The sun very late this morning. | <i>became visible</i> | c |
| 3 The book the day before yesterday. | <i>was published</i> | c |
| 4 When the war was over he of hiding. | <i>showed himself</i> | c |
| 5 The news/The truth quite unexpectedly. | <i>became known</i> | c |
| 6 The authorities finally the details of the election. | <i>made known</i> | g |

7 Her shyness when she has to speak in public.	<i>shows, is visible</i>	c
8 Our plan beautifully, as anticipated.	<i>was successful</i>	w
9 He was very helpful and where I went wrong.	<i>showed</i>	p
10 They were in England when the war	<i>began suddenly</i>	br
11 Everybody laughing/with laughter.	<i>started with force</i>	b
12 The trip to be a disaster.	<i>became</i>	t
13 It that he himself had written the letter.	<i>became known</i>	t
14 I wonder how he the content of the letter.	<i>discovered</i>	f

In pairs, improve your knowledge of certain verbs with *out*: cover up the sentences and paraphrase any verbs (or other words) you are not very familiar with:

- 1 The secret was unknown (to the public), it became known, it came out of unawareness: *it leaked out*.
- 2 The sun was invisible, by coming *out of* the state of invisibility, *it became visible*.
- 3 to be published (of a book), to get to exist —> *to come out*, etc.

Exetext 7: Replace the expressions in italics by verbs/compounds with *out*.

having an evening out – was out, were in – outbid us – (an) outbreak – outclassed – (the) outcome – (an) outcry – (an) outlet (for) – (an) outline

- 1 We are not *staying at home* tonight.
- 2 Labour *lost the election* and the Conservatives *won*.
- 3 There was *a sudden, violent occurrence* of cholera.
- 4 At the auction he *offered more than we did* for the necklace.
- 5 There was *a sudden, energetic public expression of anger*.
- 6 He *performed better than* the competitors.
- 7 What will *be the consequence/the result* of the upheaval?
- 8 Jogging is a good way *of releasing* surplus energy.
- 9 Please give *a summary/the main points* of the speech.

Glosses: 2 *Labour and the Conservatives are British political parties* – 4 *auction: a public event at which things are sold to the person who offers most money* – 5 *upheaval: big (social, political) changes often accompanied by trouble, confusion*

In groups or pairs show the important shift in meaning resulting from joining *out* to verbs or nouns.

- Ex. 1 the people will change the location/situation of ‘staying at home’ into another one viz. **having an evening out** (of the house) or leaving the home to have another social activity;
 9 the main points of the speech are not explicit, not visible; by giving an **outline** (the main points without details) they become more visible.

Exetext 8

goes out of – grow out – holding out – reach out – started out – straighten out – test ... out – try out

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1 We will first have to ... the method | t |
| 2 It is wise to ... a second-hand car before buying it. | tr |
| 3 We will have to ... this problem/misunderstanding. | str |
| 4 The doctor reassured us that Dave will ... of his stutter. | gr |
| 5 She is such a kind person: she always ... her way to help us. | g |
| 6 She ... replacing the wheel herself, but then did have to get help. | st..... |
| 7 The doctor is still ... hope for her recovery. | h |
| 8 The West should try to ... to the Third World. | r |

Glosses: 1 *decide on its quality by testing it* – 2 *wise: it shows good judgement, wisdom* – 3 *set right, clear by discussing/explaining what happened; a small disagreement, quarrel* – 4 *get rid of it by getting older; speaking with pauses and repeating some sounds or parts of words* – 5 *does everything she can, i.e. she goes away from her own preoccupations (which may be seen as her normal state)* – 7 *still offers hope; recovery: return to a normal state of health* – 8 *should make an effort/offer help and understanding*

- In pairs show how the **verb + out** exemplifies one of the features above.
 Ex. 1 The quality of the method is *unknown* until it is *tested out*, then its quality *becomes known*.
 8 Help going from the industrialised countries to the developing countries is almost non-existing; if the rich countries do help more, it will come into existence.

Without looking at the glosses focus on less familiar words and paraphrase words such as: *be wise, stutter, second-hand, to recover/recovery, the Third World.*

Exetext 9

out of breath – out of control – out of court – out of date – out of order – out of pity – out of practice – out of the question – out of sight – out of town – out of work

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 1 The sign said: “Lift <i>out of</i> ...; please use the stairs”. | out of o..... |
| 2 I’d love to play a game of tennis, but I’m rather <i>out of</i> | out of pr |
| 3 After climbing 5 flights of stairs the old man was quite <i>out of</i> | out of br |
| 4 Dictionaries are <i>out of</i> ... as soon as they are published. | out of d..... |
| 5 The bus was completely <i>out of</i> ... and plunged down the hillside. | out of c..... |
| 6 They eventually decided to settle their car accident <i>out of</i> | out of c..... |
| 7 The crowd waved until the train was <i>out of</i> | out of s..... |
| 8 We helped him solely <i>out of</i> ... for his poor wife. | out of p..... |
| 9 It’s <i>out of the</i> ... that I lend you more money. | out of the q..... |

Glosses: **3** *flights of stairs:* a series of steps between two floors or levels – **5** *plunged:* moved very fast downward *out of control* – **6** *eventually:* in the end, at last; to end the quarrel; *court:* a place where trials are held – **7** *waved:* greet with one’s hand(s) – **9** *lend:* to give for some time with the understanding that what was lent must be returned; totally impossible

Other expressions of states with **feelings** or **attitudes** meaning “because of/due to (his/her) ...”:

out of love, out of (sheer) frustration, ... concern, ... jealousy, ... compassion, ... a sense of duty, ... malice ... of work, ... the reach, ... stock

In pairs go through the learning steps outlined on p. VIII and make explicit the change in states/situations due to the use of **out**.

- Ex. 1 The *state of order* is the normal state (viewed as a container) for a lift (moving entity) to function. If it is not in this state of order, then it is *out of order*.
- 2 In order to play tennis well, a person (the moving entity) has to practise regularly, has to be in “a state of practice” (container). If this is not the case, then the person is *outside this state* or ‘container’, i.e. he is *out of practice*.

Exetest 10

blackout – dropouts – fallout – handout – outburst – outcry – outgrowth – outlook – outpatient – outrage – outset – outskirts – printout – sell-out – walk-out

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1 Several politicians abandoned their principles for money; it's a | s |
| 2 Before giving his talk, the lecturer distributed a ... to the audience. | h |
| 3 The effects of atomic ... may last for tens if not hundreds of years. | f |
| 4 I was so exhausted that I had a ... during the exam and failed. | bl |
| 5 When the trade union leader was sacked, there was a total | w |
| 6 Shirley teaches former school ... to read and write. | dr |
| 7 Could you make me a laser ... of this file? | pr |
| 8 The ... of 25 years of research in the field of medicine is impressive. | outgr |
| 9 There was a public ... when food prices went up again. | outcr |
| 10 The boss exploded in an uncontrollable ... of anger. | outb |
| 11 From the very ... the expedition was bedevilled by problems. | outs |
| 12 The ... for the future is not as grim as some forecasts predict. | outl |
| 13 Thousands of demonstrators expressed their ... at the decision. | outr |
| 14 My relatives do not live in the centre of the city, but on the | outsk |
| 15 You can register either as an in-patient or ... at the local hospital. | outp |

Glosses: **1** a betrayal – **2** a talk: a (public) lecture – **3** radioactive waste that went into the air after a nuclear explosion – **4** blackout: a temporary loss of consciousness – **5** sacked: dismissed from his job; fired; a sudden strike by workers – **6** former: of an earlier period or time; a person who does not go to school any more – **8** outgrowth: result – **9** a strong public protest; **10** a sudden and violent expression of anger – **11** beginning; was bedevilled: bothered, afflicted by trouble – **12** outlook: prospects; not as grim: not as bad or depressing – **13** anger and shock – **14** the parts of the city that are farthest from the centre of the city

Out occurs in quite a number of compounds either as the first part or as the second. All compounds of the above list have the stress on the first syllable.

In pairs identify some of the states/situations which, when modified, lead to the use of a compound with *out*.

Ex. **burst, a burst:** to break or open violently (often due to inside pressure): water-pipes, balloons, dams can burst, but people too (whose bodies are viewed as containers);
 an **outburst** is then a violent and sudden (emotional) explosion of a person due to inside pressure resulting from anger, violence, tension, frustration that has built up.

Exetest 11

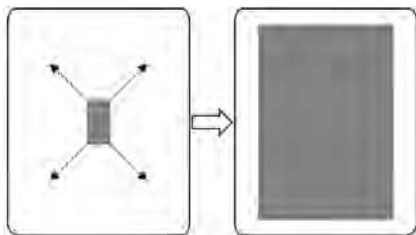
outdated – outer – outgoing – outlandish – outlying – outrageous – outright – outspoken – outstanding (2x)

- 1 He likes to walk around in .../weird clothes. outl.....
- 2 What he said was an ... lie. How dare he! outr.....
- 3 He should be ashamed to make such an .../disgusting offer! outr.....
- 4 Most people were ... in their support of the government in exile. outsp
- 5 Learners of English used to have to learn .../old-fashioned idioms. outd.....
- 6 The new boss lavishly praised the work of the .../retiring chairman. outg.....
- 7 Her father has had a long and .../exceptional career in diplomacy. outst
- 8 Our buses serve all the .../remote areas around the city. outl.....
- 9 He wanted to paint the ... walls of the house green. out.....
- 10 We don't know how our country will manage to pay its huge ... debt. outst

Glosses: **1** weird: strange, unconventional – **2** outright: obvious, clear – **6** boss: manager; lavishly: generously, at great length – **8** remote: far away from – **10** huge: very large, enormous; outstanding: not paid yet, still to be paid

There are also a number of adjectives formed with **out** and which are derived from verbs; normally they keep the main stress on the verb element except 'outlying and 'outright.

1.7 OUT: trajectors increasing to maximal boundaries



dragged out/drew out – dry out – fight out – give out – hang ... out – hold out – sat out – spread out – stick ... out – wash out

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1 Please the map on the table, it'll make it easier to find the place. | spr..... |
| 2 The nets are still wet, we have to ... them | h |
| 3 I can only hope that my car will another year. | h |
| 4 He was lucky: he World War II in America. | s..... |
| 5 We'll have to ... it ... here till the end of the academic year. | st..... |
| 6 The two political opponents decided to ... their lifetime quarrel | f |
| 7 The lawyer all the details during the trial. | dr...../dr..... |
| 8 He is an alcoholic who is trying to | dr |
| 9 With a good detergent the stains will in no time. | w..... |
| 10 My old car will ... ../pack up one of these days; I'd better look around for another one. | g |

Glosses: **1** *unfold or open the map to its maximal width, size* – **2** *the nets are wet and rolled up so we'll have to stretch them out to dry* – **3** *last* – **4** *stayed there the whole war period* – **5** *endure hardship or inconvenience until the end* – **6** *to settle the argument or quarrel by fighting (a duel)* – **7** *talked much longer than necessary making the trial last as long as possible* – **8** *dry out: not drinking any alcohol at all so as to cure his alcoholism* – **9** *detergent: powder or liquid to wash clothes; stains: dirty spots, marks; in no time: very fast* – **10** *will break down or stop running completely, i.e. one will no longer be able to use it as a car; I'd better: I had better; it would be better if ...*

Concrete objects (as in 1–2) with a minimal shape when not in use (a map is folded, nets are rolled up when not in use) expand to their maximal shape when used with **out**. Similarly the same can be done with abstract or figurative verbs + **out** relating to *time periods* and intrinsic physical properties with a potential for *stretching*. Cf. also Exetests 12 & 13.

Show how the sentences (3–10) relate to aspects which all have a stretching potential since they all have a durative aspect, i.e. they last some time and time is often viewed as a surface which can extend.

Exetext 12

burned out/burnt out – cleaned out – conked out/cut out – last ... out – passes out – root out – sit ... out – starve out – stretched out – talk ... out – tidying out

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1 I have been doing this job so long, I feel /... .. . | b...../b..... |
| 2 When robbing the bank, the burglars all the safes. | cl..... |
| 3 You won't ... the day ... on an empty stomach. | l..... |
| 4 It's high time you did something to your smoking habit. | r..... |
| 5 Mary always at the sight of blood. | p..... |
| 6 The army surrounded the city to the population. | st..... |
| 7 The explorers their water supply until they came to a well. | str..... |
| 8 It is better to ... a problem ... than pretend it does not exist. | t..... |
| 9 What have you been doing lately? – the attic. | T..... |
| 10 We had hardly left when suddenly the motor /... .. . | c...../c..... |
| 11 He did not like the course, but as he had already paid the fee
he decided to ... it ... till the end of the year. | s..... |

Glosses: **1** without energy, enthusiasm and strength – **2** thieves entering a bank, a house to steal; safes: metallic boxes which can be locked to store valuables – **3** manage to stay fit, function, stay alive – **4** lit. to take out the roots, i.e. stop smoking completely – **5** faints, loses consciousness; sight: when she sees blood – **6** to force people to surrender or come out of the city by not supplying them with food – **7** made it last till they found water (a well) – **8** to settle by discussing every aspect, detail – **9** make tidy, neat and remove all unnecessary objects; but US: tidying up – **10** stopped working completely – **11** fee: sum of money paid for professional services, for example private teaching; sit ... out: to continue though it was boring, unpleasant, not efficacious, etc.; but US: sit sth out means 'not participate in it at all'

In pairs or groups paraphrase the words you are not familiar with (using the glosses) and show how the phrasal verbs exemplify the increase to maximal boundaries. Example:

to sit sth out: to stay for a whole period or to the very end of the course (though its quality is not up to what you expected or wanted)

Exetest 13

outdoes – outlived – outmanoeuvred – outnumbered – outrun – outvoted – outweigh – outwit

- 1 The opposition ... the majority that was divided on the issue. outv
- 2 The police were ... by the demonstrators. outm
- 3 The leopard runs fast, but the cheetah can ... it. outr
- 4 At fifty, his father still ... him in physical strength. outd
- 5 I believe that the advantages of your solution ... the disadvantages. outw
- 6 This old bicycle has ... its usefulness. outl
- 7 The demonstrators ... the police by ten to one. outn
- 8 John isn't very bright; Sue will easily ... him. outw

Glosses: 1 *issue: point; defeated in the vote* – 2 *the kidnappers acted more cleverly* – 5 *are greater, more important than* – 6 *is no longer useful and could be disposed of* – 7 *were more numerous* – 8 *bright: intelligent; outwit: defeat him by being cleverer*

1.8 OUT: key

1.1 Out: entities moving out of containers

1 jumped out of – 2 sprang out of < spring – 3 throw out – 4 ran out of/stormed out of – 5 let ... out/put ... out – 6 sent ... out – 7 cut out – 8 flew out of (< fly) – 9 lean out of – 10 Hang out – 11 knocked out, jumped out – 12 Watch out

Exetest 1

1 broke out of (< break) – 2 jump out of – 3 looks out of – 4 pour ... out – 5 shook out (< shake) – 6 climb out of – 7 squeeze ... out of – 8 come out – 9 got ... out of – 10 take out

Exetest 2

1 rush/dash out of – 2 sneak out of/slip out of – 3 wring out – 4 rinse out – 5 turn out – 6 set out/started out – 7 locked ... out – 8 growing out of – 9 keep ... out of

Exetest 3

1 rushed out of – 2 driven out of (< drive) – 3 pushed ... out – 4 slid out of (< slide) – 5 are out of – 6 check out – 7 scrub ... out – 8 lent out (< lend) – 9 wiped out – 10 left out (< leave)

1.2 Out: eat or inviting to eat away from home

(a) ask ... out – take ... out – invite ... out – eat out
 (b) threw ... out of (< throw) – ousted ... out of

1.3 Out: sets, groups are containers

1 sort out – 2 Set ... out – 3 spaced ... out – 4 picked out – 5 find out – 6 came out of/cut out of – 7 kicked out of – 8 Cross out – 9 (+ superlative) ... out (out of all idiots) – 10 Count ... out

1.4 Out: bodies, minds, mouths are viewed as containers

1 was out of – 2 pulling out/taking out – 3 stuck out (< stick) – 4 held out (< hold) – 5 reached out – 6 handed out/gave out – 7 thought out (< think) – 8 deal out – 9 stammer out – 10 Look out

Exetest 4

1 cry ... out – 2 hear ... out – 3 have ... out – 4 speak out against – 5 cried out against – 6 screamed/shouted/yelled out – 7 bellowed/thundered/yelled out – 8 sob out – 9 poured out

1.5 Out: states/situations are containers

1 ran out of (< run) – 2 wiped out – 3 knocked out – 4 put ... out – 5 are out of – 6 went out of – 7 went out – 8 blot ... out of – 9 worn out (< wear) – 10 talk ... out of – 11 hammer out/talk out – 12 talked/tricked ... out

Exetest 5

1 dropped out of – 2 searches out – 3 put out – 4 black out – 5 put out/turn out – 6 died out – 7 knocked ... out – 8 petered out – 9 ruled out – 10 (I have to) cancel out of – 11 chickened out – 12 cop out on – 13 forced ... out of

1.6 Out: non-existence/ignorance/invisibility also functions as containers

1 put out/turn out – 2 come out of/get out of – 3 write out – 4 find out – 5 sound out – 6 point out – 7 make out – 8 work out – 9 fill out/make out – 10 bring out – 11 carry out – 12 make out – 13 make out

Exetest 6

1 leaked out – 2 came out – 3 came out – 4 came out – 5 came out – 6 gave out – 7 comes out – 8 worked out – 9 pointed out – 10 broke out (< break) – 11 burst out – 12 turned out – 13 turned out – 14 figured out

Exetest 7

1 We are having an evening out. – 2 Labour is out and the Conservatives are in. – 3 There was an outbreak of cholera. – 4 At the auction, he outbid us for the pearl necklace. – 5 There was an outcry of anger. – 6 He outclassed the competitors. – 7 What will be the outcome of the upheaval? – 8 Jogging is a good outlet for surplus energy. – 9 Please give an outline of the speech.

Exetest 8

1 test out – 2 try out – 3 straighten out – 4 grow out – 5 goes out of – 6 started out – 7 holding out – 8 reach out

Exetest 9

1 out of order – 2 out of practice – 3 out of breath – 4 out of date – 5 out of control – 6 out of court – 7 out of sight – 8 out of pity – 9 out of the question

Exetest 10

1 sell-out – 2 handout – 3 fallout – 4 blackout – 5 walkout – 6 dropouts – 7 printout – 8 outgrowth – 9 outcry – 10 outburst – 11 outset – 12 outlook – 13 outrage – 14 outskirts – 15 outpatient

Exetest 11

1 outlandish – 2 outright – 3 outrageous – 4 outspoken – 5 outdated – 6 outgoing – 7 outstanding – 8 outlying – 9 outer – 10 outstanding

1.7 Out: containers increasing to maximal boundaries

1 spread out – 2 hang ... out – 3 hold out – 4 sat out – 5 stick ... out – 6 fight ... out – 7 dragged out/drew out – 8 dry out – 9 wash out – 10 give out

Exetest 12

1 burned out/burnt out – 2 cleaned out – 3 last ... out – 4 root out – 5 passes out – 6 starve out – 7 stretched out – 8 talk ... out – 9 Tidying out – 10 conked out/cut out – 11 sit ... out

Exetest 13

1 outvoted – 2 outmanoeuvred – 3 outrun – 4 outdoes – 5 outweigh – 6 outlived – 7 outnumbered – 8 outwit

1.9 Expand and test your knowledge of 'out'

Work in groups of two or three, compare and discuss the answers and try to find optimal solutions.

1 Explain the main senses of 'out' to a friend who does not know them.

Illustrate each feature with a few examples such as *write out*, *eat out*, *work out*, *sit out*, etc.

2 Give (a) concrete and/or (b) figurative entities/objects that can be used with:

1 throw out – 2 pour out – 3 shake out – 4 wring out – 5 smooth out – 6 deal out – 7 sort out – 8 straighten out – 9 run out of – 10 rub out – 11 wipe out – 12 stick out/stick it out – 13 leak out – 14 drop out – 15 squeeze out – 16 stretch out

3 *Using synonyms, antonyms or paraphrases, explain the meanings of:*

1 an outpatient – 2 the outskirts – 3 a dropout – 4 a handout – 5 an outcry/outrage (against) – 6 an outing – 7 a sell-out – 8 an outburst – 9 a blackout – 10 nuclear fallout – 11 an outgrowth – 12 an outline – 13 a bleak outlook – 14 an outpouring – 15 an output – 16 at the outset – 17 an outsider – 18 an outlet – 19 an outfit – 20 the outcome

4 *Describe the situations/circumstances in which you might say or hear the following:*

1 Don't leave till the storm has raged itself out. – 2 For your own sake, keep out of that mess. – 3 She burst out laughing/crying. – 4 The old man was tricked out of his fortune. – 5 Finally the crook was voted out of office. – 6 He managed to wriggle out (of this mess). – 7 What time should we start out tomorrow? – 8 Have you considered the outcome? – 9 First try to sound him out. – 10 I won't stick it out here another semester. – 11 We should hear him out first.

5 *Explain why the following verbs have generally a negative connotation, i.e. secondary meaning.*

1 to mete out – 2 to starve out – 3 to fizzle out – 4 to bark out – 5 to bluff one's way out – 6 to wipe out – 7 to leak out – 8 to be burned out/burnt out – 9 to cop out/duck out/chicken out – 10 to be out of one's mind

6 *Replace the following expressions, paraphrases by a verb with out.*

1 to choose objects out of a set and classify them in subgroups according to some criteria – 2 to leave (a room) very quickly – 3 to show one's tongue to sb; to stay longer, till the end though one does not like it – 4 to distribute a document to a group of people – 5 to clear a problem by discussing it (the problem is viewed as a bump on a smooth surface) – 6 to invite sb to a restaurant – 7 to make sb leave a club, a group, an association – 8 to listen to everything a person has to say about sth – 9 to remove (a page) roughly by pulling – 10 to kill (usually) a whole group, an entire population – 11 to convince/persuade sb not to do sth – 12 to stay/wait somewhere until sth unpleasant finishes

7 *What differences and similarities are there between the following pairs?*

1 be burned/be burnt out – 2 vote for/outvote – 3 grow/grow out – 4 last/last out – 5 spread/spread out – 6 search/search out – 7 fly/fly out from – 8 sleep/sleep out – 9 spell/spell out – 10 wait/wait out – 11 wipe/wipe out – 12 find/find

out – 13 tear/tear out – 14 hold/hold out – 15 cross/cross out – 16 stick/stick (it) out – 17 speak/speak out for/against – 18 walk/walk out – 19 die/die out – 20 live/outlive

8 Replace the following definitions, paraphrases by a verb with out.

1 to cease to exist (of a family, of a practice) – 2 to extinguish a fire – 3 to stop going to school – 4 to declare sth not possible (as a cause) – 5 to develop (a method) by thinking – 6 to endure hardship until the end – 7 to think about a problem or situation till you have found a solution – 8 to become better, larger, cleverer than sb else – 9 to give up sth/to be afraid of continuing – 10 to be mad, extremely angry

9 Collocations: a native speaker would have no difficulty finding several appropriate adjectives or nouns that go with the following:

- | | | |
|------------|----------|--------------------|
| 1 a(n) ... | sell-out | 7 (an) outrageous |
| 2 a(n) ... | outing | 8 an outstanding |
| 3 a(n) ... | handout | 9 (an) outdated |
| 4 a(n) ... | outlook | 10 an outlying |
| 5 a(n) ... | outfit | 11 an outgoing |
| 6 (an) ... | outline | 12 (an) outlandish |

You may choose from the following:

- 1–6 extensive, long – bleak, gloomy – short, coherent – sad, outrageous, disgusting – pleasant, enjoyable – elegant, extravagant;
 7–12 village, place – clothes, expression – student, debt – views, ideas – behaviour, price – model, ideas

10 Replace the following expressions by a verb with out.

1 They were (almost) destroyed, ceased to exist. – 2 eliminate, make sth disappear by crossing out – 3 He ceased to be conscious. – 4 The injection made her faint, lose consciousness. – 5 Miniskirts are no longer fashionable. – 6 They had to quit, to disappear. – 7 Somebody had deleted a whole paragraph. – 8 They are no longer in good shape. – 9 We had no time/money left. – 10 It came gradually to an end. – 11 An accident was declared impossible.

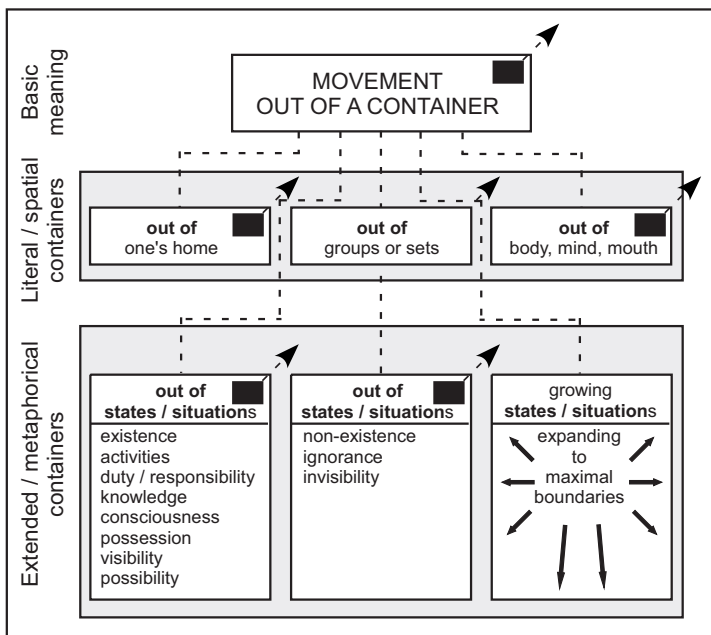
11 Specify the situations/circumstances in which you might hear or say the following.

- 1 The workers will *stick out* for their wage claims.
- 2 She looks *worn out*, doesn't she?
- 3 *Keep out* of the whole thing/of the mess.
- 4 What *came out* of the meeting?
- 5 A piece of advice: you had better *look out* with him.
- 6 She is good at *fishing* things *out*.
- 7 They'll never be able *to dig out* the truth.
- 8 *Get out* (of here).
- 9 I can tell you: you'll *lose out* on the deal.
- 10 He *was out/passed out* for half an hour.
- 11 That's *out of the question*. Over my dead body.

12 Replace the following expressions, paraphrases by a phrasal verb with out.

- 1 to disappear/leave quietly so as not to be noticed
- 2 to press/twist an object so that water/juice comes out of it
- 3 to remove dirt from a bottle by washing with clean water
- 4 to become too big for one's clothes
- 5 to show the inside of one's pockets
- 6 to distribute tickets, cards
- 7 to arrange in groups, piles, categories
- 8 to restore to the right shape/to solve a problem
- 9 to happen to be, to prove
- 10 to remain outside (of a house) being unable to enter without a key

13 Comment on the following graphic synthesis of the related meanings of OUT. Give examples.



1.10 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'out''

2 Give several (a) concrete and/or (b) figurative 'objects' one can use with the following verbs.

- 1 *throw out:* (a) shoes, clothes, rubbish, fishing nets, old paper
(b) ideas, a suggestion, a bad sentence, a person, a drunk person
- 2 *pour out:* (a) coffee, water, beer, tea
(b) thoughts and feelings of anger, love, frustration, enthusiasm
- 3 *shake out:* (a) a carpet, clothes, a table-cloth, a wet umbrella
- 4 *wring out:* (a) a towel, a piece of cloth, a cap, a wet sock
- 5 *smooth out:* (a) folds (in a dress, a table-cloth), a sheet of paper
(b) a situation, a misunderstanding, difficulties, problems, obstacles
- 6 *deal out:* (a) presents, cards; (b) a punishment, blows (a boxer)

- 7 *sort out*: (a) stamps, documents, objects (according to some criteria)
(b) problems, difficulties
- 8 *straighten out*: (a) wires, string; (b) a mess, a quarrel, a disagreement, a misunderstanding
- 9 *run out of*: (a) a room, a house; (b) petrol, money, food, time, luck
- 10 *rub out*: (b) stains, marks, a name, a word (written in pencil, with a rubber/eraser)
- 11 *wipe out*: (a) a container, pots, pans; (b) a population, a debt, a village, a whole city
- 12 *stick out*: (a) one's head, one's hand(s); a tower, a rock sticks out
stick it out: (b) in one's hard job, in an unpleasant situation, in one's duty
- 13 *leak out*: (a) liquid, water, petrol; (b) a secret, a piece of news, a piece of information
- 14 *drop out*: (b) (of) a group, school, college, politics, a race contest
- 15 *squeeze out*: (a) water, juice, toothpaste (out of a tube); (b) money, taxes, people
- 16 *stretch out*: (a) to lie flat, relaxed on the floor, on the ground, in the grass
(b) one's food, one's money so as to cover one's needs for some time

3 Using synonyms, antonyms or paraphrases, explain the meaning of:

- 1 *an outpatient*: a person who goes home after each treatment in hospital
- 2 *the outskirts*: the peripheral (outside) parts of a town or city
- 3 *a dropout*: sb who does not go to school any more or who withdraws from a course
- 4 *a handout*: a document related to the talk or paper (which) a person gives to an audience
- 5 *an outcry/outrage*: a violent and sudden expression of public anger
- 6 *an outing*: a (short) trip
- 7 *a sell-out*: a betrayal, too big a concession made to the opposition/enemy
- 8 *an outburst*: an explosion of strong emotions
- 9 *a blackout*: a moment of unconsciousness so that one is not in control of one's mind

- 10 *nuclear fallout*: radioactive dust that goes into the air after an explosion in a nuclear plant
- 11 *an outgrowth*: a natural consequence or development of an initiative
- 12 *an outline*: a summary, the main points of an article, book or paper
- 13 *a bleak outlook*: a bad future; a bad weather forecast
- 14 *an outpouring*: a strong expression of usually hostile feelings
- 15 *the output*: the production (in a factory)
- 16 *at the outset*: from the beginning
- 17 *an outsider*: a person who does not belong to a group
- 18 *an outlet*: the release or expression of one's feelings, energy, enthusiasm, etc.
- 19 *an outfit*: clothes generally worn for a special occasion
- 20 *the outcome*: the result of an action or event

4 Describe the situations or circumstances in which you might say or hear the following:

- 1 wait till the storm calms down
- 2 a piece of advice (in your own interest): do not get involved in this difficult situation
- 3 she started roaring (with laughter) because something very funny was said
- 4 the old man lost his fortune because a person used dishonest means/tricks to get hold of it
- 5 the dishonest politician lost many votes and was not reelected as a representative
- 6 using all kinds of means, arguments, the person managed not to have to do sth unpleasant
- 7 you are going somewhere with sb and you have to agree on the time of the departure
- 8 a person did sth and you want to know whether he thought of the result of his action
- 9 you would like the person to get to know the other person's feelings or opinion
- 10 the person thinks he will not be able to stay another term
- 11 before taking an initiative we would first want to get more information from the other person

5 Explain why the following verbs have a negative meaning.

- 1 *mete out*: give a punishment; the verb is related to sth wrong, bad that was done
- 2 *starve out*: make surrender or leave by cutting off all food supplies
- 3 *fizzle out*: about sth that ends too fast and in a rather disappointing way
- 4 *bark out*: talk loudly and in a harsh, aggressive and unpleasant way
- 5 *bluff one's way out*: be able to last in a difficult situation by deceiving, cheating
- 6 *wipe out*: destroy a whole group or nation completely
- 7 *leak out*: (of a secret, news) to come out or be known
- 8 *be burned/burnt out*: burned completely; also: exhausted, without energy
- 9 *cop/duck/chicken out*: avoid doing sth one is obliged to do, but which one does not like
- 10 *be out of one's mind*: be extremely angry

6 Replace the following expressions, paraphrases by a verb with out.

1 sort out – 2 rush/dash out of – 3 stick (it) out – 4 hand out sth – 5 straighten out sth – 6 ask/take sb out – 7 kick out – 8 hear sb out – 9 tear out – 10 wipe out – 11 talk out of – 12 to sit (it) out

7 What differences/similarities are there between the following pairs?

- 1 *burned/burnt-out*: (a) to be injured by a fire or by an acid
(b) to be exhausted mentally, without energy, be fed up with work
- 2 *vote for/outvote*: (a) to choose a candidate in an election
(b) to give more votes to the other person, party
- 3 *grow/grow out*: (a) to become bigger; (b) to become too big for a garment
- 4 *last/last out*: (a) to continue over a (long) period of time
(b) to manage to survive thanks to a supply of food and drinks
- 5 *spread/spread out*: (a) to unfold or open the whole surface of an object
(b) to open/unfold completely; of a group of people: to scatter, go in all directions so as to cover a bigger surface

- 6 *search/search out*: (a) looking for sth while covering a (big) surface or area
(b) to look carefully and as long as necessary until one finds what one was looking for
- 7 *fly/fly out (from)*: (a) to move, travel by plane; (b) to leave by plane from a certain place
- 8 *sleep/sleep out*: (a) not be awake, rest; (b) to sleep outside or away from home
- 9 *spell/spell out*: (a) to give the letters of a word in their order
(b) to explain sth in (great) detail
- 10 *wait/wait out*: (a) to stay doing nothing else until sth happens
(b) to wait until the whole period of time passes
- 11 *wipe/wipe out*: (a) to clean or dry sth by rubbing its surface with a piece of cloth
(b) to dry out a wet container; to destroy/kill a whole group or a nation
- 12 *find/find out*: (a) to discover sth, often by surprise
(b) to learn sth one did not know by asking, searching
- 13 *tear/tear out*: (a) to pull into pieces, with force (a sheet, a picture)
(b) to pull while separating a sheet (out of a book, a magazine)
- 14 *hold/hold out*: (a) to have sth in one's hands and keep it
(b) to resist and stay as long as possible in a difficult situation
- 15 *cross/cross out*: (a) to go to the other side (e.g. the street)
(b) to draw a line through a name or word because it is incorrect
- 16 *stick/stick (it) out for*: (a) to push a pointed object into sth; to attach two objects by means of glue, a sticky product
(b) lit. to stick out: come out of another object (hands vs. main body);
fig. to stick it out: to persevere, continue notwithstanding difficulties
- 17 *speak/speak out*: (a) to talk, say sth; (b) to defend courageously in public (be *outspoken*)
- 18 *walk/walk out*: (a) to move slowly often without a purpose
(b) to get up and leave a room in a calm way
- 19 *die/die out*: (a) to leave this life, to pass away

- 20 *live/outlive* (b) of a species or family: to become extinct
(a) to be alive; (b) to live longer than the person/
people mentioned

8 *Replace the following definitions, paraphrases by a 'verb + out'.*

1 die out – 2 put out – 3 drop out – 4 rule out – 5 work out – 6 stick (it) out – 7 figure out – 8 outstrip, outdo, outwit – 9 chicken out – 10 be out of one's mind

9 *Collocations: a native speaker would have no difficulty finding several appropriate adjectives or nouns that go with the following.*

1 a disgusting, deplorable **sell-out** – 2 a pleasant, enjoyable **outing** – 3 a short, long, meaty **handout** – 4 a bleak, gloomy **outlook** – 5 an extravagant, elegant **outfit** – 6 a coherent, extensive **outline**

7 an **outrageous** price, behaviour – 8 an **outstanding** student, debt (not paid yet) – 9 (an) **outdated** model, ideas – 10 an **outlying** village, place – 11 an **outgoing** person, government – 12 (an) **outlandish** expression, clothes

10 *Replace the following expressions by a verb with out.*

1 wiped out – 2 cross out – 3 passed out – 4 put (her) out – 5 are out – 6 were forced ... out – 7 sb had blotted out a whole § – 8 out of practice – 9 we ran out of time/money – 10 petered out – 11 ruled out

11 *Specify the situations/circumstances in which you might hear the following.*

1 When the workers had started an action and there were problems, difficulties – 2 When sb looks very tired, exhausted – 3 A piece of advice to sb not to get involved in sth – 4 You were not at the meeting, but you want to know whether decisions were taken – 5 You warn sb to be careful, not to trust that person who(m) you know – 6 About a person who has a talent for finding things after a long search – 7 You are sceptical about their ability to uncover the truth – 8 You have enough of a person, you are fed up with him and you tell him to leave – 9 You warn the person that he will not get what he was entitled to get, he will be losing – 10 Something happened and the person was unconscious for half an hour – 11 In no way can this happen or be done unless the person is dead.

12 Replace the following definitions, paraphrases by a verb + out.

1 sneak/slip out – 2 squeeze/wring out – 3 clean/rinse out – 4 grow out of –
5 turn out – 6 hand/give/deal out – 7 sort out – 8 straighten out – 9 turn out –
10 be locked out

2 IN is entering or being inside a container

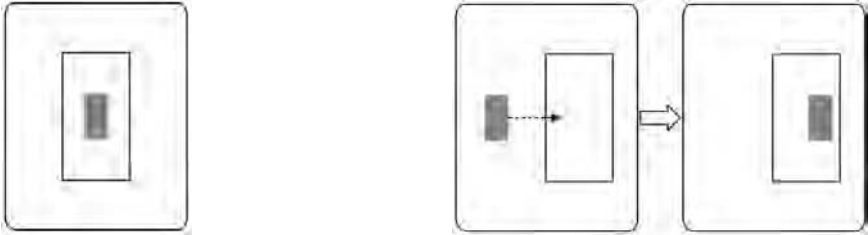
In is the fourth most frequently used particle (after **up**, **out**, **off**). In this section **in** occurs some 140 times (mainly as a preposition or as a prefix and only about 40 times as a particle. Like **out** (**of**), **in** includes in its meaning the concept of a *container*. Again, the container may be anything that surrounds the entity or moving object or anything in which the moving object can be located or can enter.

In presenting the different related senses of **in** we will use the same symbols as for **out**. The only new element will be this figure:



and it will symbolize an object's environment or simply the space which the object occupies.

2.1 IN: being inside or entering a container



Read the words carefully and fill them in to the right of the sentences. Pay special attention to the kinds of 'containers' **in** is used with.

bin – face – garden, room – hall, department store – jeopardy – mouth – nose – school, church, mosque, synagogue – swimming pool, lake – tea-pot, kettle – teeth – wall

- 1 He must be either ... the *g...* or ... his *r...* upstairs.
- 2 Throw the rubbish .../into the *b...*, will you?
- 3 Is there still water ... the *t...-p...*, ... the *k...*?
- 4 We had a lovely swim ... the *sw... p...*, ... the *l...*
- 5 He is ... *sch...*, in *ch.../... the mos.../... the syn...*
- 6 They assembled together ... the *h...*, ... the *d... st...*
- 7 With a powerful drill they made a hole ... the *w...*
- 8 The dentist noticed a big hole ... two of his *t...*
- 9 What have you got ... your *m...*? Chewing gum?

- 10 This mad bloke punched me ... the n...
- 11 Why did he slap you ... the f...?
- 12 With the economic recession lots of jobs are in

Glosses: **2** rubbish (US: trash, garbage): things one throws away; bin: container for rubbish – **7** hole: a hollow space in a solid object – **10** bloke: man; hit in the face, in the nose – **11** slap: hit in the face with the open hand – **12** at risk, in danger

The container/surface can be a garden, a building, a room, a car, a box, a pot, a cup, a purse, a lake, ground, rock, a field, a town or a country, one part of one’s body, etc. The entity either moves *into* the container or is already *inside* it.

Exetext 1

bed – coffee – essay – hand/bush – (news)paper – picture – rags – sky – space – sweat – white, pink

- 1 Joanna has a heavy cold, perhaps even flu, so she has to stay ... b...
- 2 Do you take milk and sugar ... your c...?
- 3 Write your name ... the empty sp... at the top of the page.
- 4 There isn’t a single cloud ... the sk...
- 5 There are too many serious mistakes ... your e...
- 6 I disagree with the content of that article ... the p...
- 7 As you can see, the whole family is ... the p... except Mary.
- 8 The poor old man was ... r...
- 9 For the solemn occasion, she was all dressed ... wh..., ... p...
- 10 Don’t get too close: I may be getting the flu, I’m all in a sw...
- 11 ‘One bird ... the h... is better than two in the b...’ is a well-known saying.

Glosses: **8** in old, torn (< tear) and often dirty clothes – **9** serious, dignified – **11** bush: a relatively low plant (compared with a tree) with several stems coming out of the soil; a saying meaning ‘what one has is better than to risk losing it by trying to get more’

Exetest 2

drill ... in – flocked in – leaking in – moved in – packed in – pop in – pulled in – rushed in – slip in/sneak in – smuggled in – stormed in – turn in

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 1 The rain was ... through a crack in the roof. | l |
| 2 As the lock of the front door is broken, we will have to ... our way | dr |
| 3 Every day lots of tourists ... to see the exhibition. | fl |
| 4 The youngsters hoped to ... /... without anyone noticing. | sl..... /sn..... |
| 5 Quite a lot of drugs are ... through our ports. | sm..... |
| 6 Madame Butterfly always ... a large audience. | p |
| 7 I'll go and see the new neighbours who have just | m |
| 8 Do you mind if I ... for tea tomorrow? | p |
| 9 It's already midnight, it's high time to | t |
| 10 The new film ... huge crowds for weeks on end. | p |
| 11 She ... with the good news that she had passed her exams. | r |
| 12 With fire in his eyes, the leader ... and began to yell out orders. | st..... |

Glosses: **1** *leaking in:* liquid, gas entering steadily in small quantities; *crack:* a narrow space or opening – **2** *drill ... in(to):* force in one's way with a drill or machine by destroying the lock – **3** *came in in big groups, great numbers (a flock of sheep, goats) – 5* are brought in illegally – **6** *attracts large audiences – 8* visit you briefly – **9** (informal) *turn in:* go to bed – **10** *packed in:* attracted; *for weeks on end:* continuously for many weeks

Identify the 'moving objects'/entities and 'containers' or supply them where they are missing:

Ex. **1** ***moving entity:*** water/humidity; ***container:*** house, room (not mentioned) – 2 we; house (not mentioned) – 3 tourists; museum (not mentioned)

Paraphrase the words which are new to you and show why **in** is used with the verbs.

Exetext 3

broke in – caved in on – fence in – gets in – hauled in – plugged in – soak in – swept in – take in – walk in – welcomed in

- 1 Don't think you can just here and start giving orders. w
- 2 All the guests were and given a grand feast. w
- 3 Do you have any idea what time her flight/plane? g
- 4 We had to the vegetable garden to protect it from rabbits. f.....
- 5 For the second time burglars last night. br.....
- 6 A band of thieves on horseback and raided the village. sw.....
- 7 The landlady decided not to students any more. t.....
- 8 Let the stain-remover for an hour before washing the shirt. s
- 9 Several suspects were, but they all had an alibi. h.....
- 10 I know why your computer doesn't work: it's not pl.....
- 11 During the earthquake, the ceiling/the roof (... us). c

Glosses: 3 her plane (fly, flight); lands – 4 surround the garden with a structure, a fence – 5 burglars: thieves who enter illegally and by force to steal – 6 swept in: moved in unexpectedly, fast and with force – 7 she would no longer provide accomodation = put up – 8 a product removing stains, (dirty) spots, marks; soak in: enter, penetrate slowly – 9 hauled in: brought to the police station; an alibi: evidence that at the time of the crime the person was at another place – 11 earthquake: a sudden and violent shaking of the earth; caved in: collapsed, fell inwards

2.2 IN: atmospheric circumstances as containers

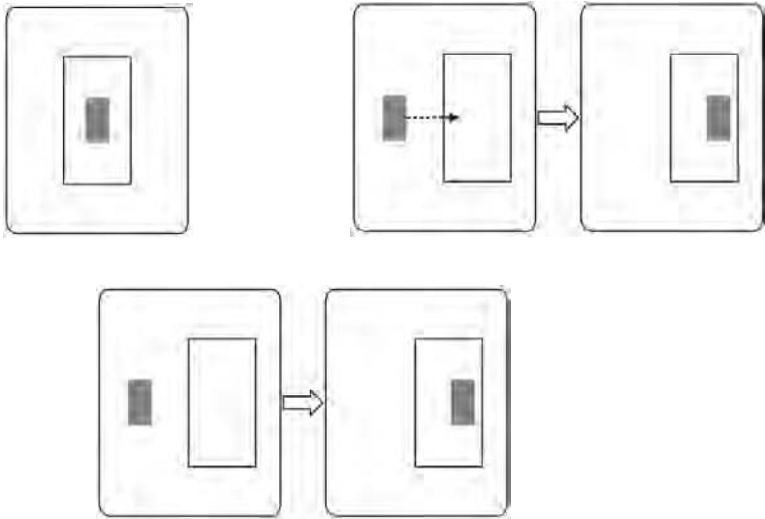


bloom – dark – rain, snow, mist, cold, heat – sun, shade

- 1 I hate walking ... the r..., ... the sn..., ... the m..., ... the c..., ... the h...
- 2 Some people enjoy sitting in the s..., others like to sit in the sh...
- 3 We got lost ... the d...
- 4 Orchards are lovely in spring when trees are in bl...

Rain, sun, darkness, etc. are all viewed as containers entailing the use of **in**.

2.3 IN: time viewed as a container



- 1 I will go there ... spring, ... summer, ... autumn, ... winter.
- ... the morning, ... the afternoon, ... the evening.
- ... a moment, ... a few days, ... a fortnight.
- ... a week's time.
- 2 He did the work ... no time.
- 3 It happened ... that particular year, ... 68, ... the past, ... the sixties.
- 4 She must be ... her forties or ... her early fifties now.
- 5 ... my youth, we had to work physically much harder than now.

Time is an abstraction and we can only conceptualize it and talk about it in concrete terms. One of the ways of doing it is viewing time as a container. Whatever happens during a certain period of time is viewed as happening inside that container. See also **on**: *on* Friday(s), *on* Sunday(s), *on* that day, *on* time.

Names of containers are often omitted with “PVs + in”

As you will already have noticed the container is often not specified when its identity is clear from the context. For instance in the case of *Plug in the lamp/the iron/the TV set*, it is obvious that the container is the *socket* into which the plug fits. In the case of *Can't you cram/pack/squeeze more dresses in?* the container can, depending on the context, be a *suitcase, a wardrobe or any other enclosed space* into which the person tries to pack or press the dresses. The meaning is almost always clear from the context.

1 (A knocks at the door and B opens)

A: “May I talk to Ann”?

B: “I’m afraid she *is* not ... right now”. *She isn't at home or in her room.*

2 (A telephones to an institution)

A: “I would like to speak to Mr. Brown”.

Secretary: “Just a second. I’ll see if he *is* ...
today *in his office.*”

When the main verb indicates motion or is connected with a verb of motion, **in** means ‘*into the given place*’.

bring in – call ... in/ask ... in – came in – check in – come in – drop in/pop in/call in – get in – let ... in – led ... in – send in – squeeze in

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Please | <i>Enter the room in which I am!</i> |
| 2 ... the person ... !/... the person | <i>Make the person come where I am.</i> |
| 3 I can't The door is locked. | <i>I cannot enter.</i> |
| 4 ... the dog | <i>Let the dog go/come inside.</i> |
| 5 She ... the guests | <i>She ushered the guests into the house.</i> |
| 6 The plane on time. | <i>The plane landed as scheduled.</i> |
| 7 the flower bulbs before it starts freezing. | <i>Put the bulbs in a sheltered spot.</i> |
| 8 What time do we have to? | <i>report our arrival, e.g. at a hotel desk</i> |
| 9 your application (form) by May 1. | <i>before May the first/the first of May</i> |
| 10 Please /... .. /... .. and see us. | <i>pay a casual visit</i> |
| 11 There was a huge crowd, but he managed to | <i>to force himself into the room</i> |

As for the literal or spatial meaning of **in**, the name of the container is often omitted. In this case, **in** means ‘*in the place where one is expected to be*’, for instance, *a house, an apartment, a room, a station or an office*. The situation in which **in** is used will usually allow you to identify the place.

Identify the moving objects/entities and containers or supply them when they are missing.

Spatial ‘IN(TO)’ is often the opposite of spatial ‘OUT (of)’/outside

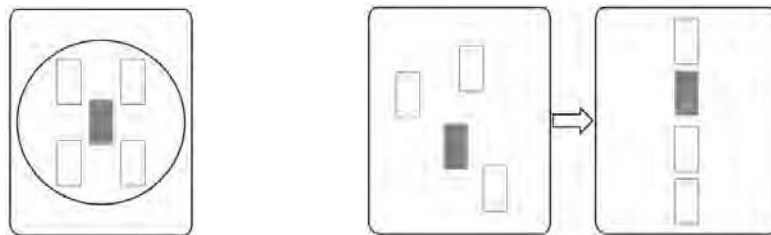
Show (via sentences, collocations, paraphrases, etc.) that the following verbs of spatial movement can be used with **in/into** as well as with **out (of)**.

- 1 walk in(to)/out (of), drive in(to)/out (of), come in(to)/out (of),
sail in(to)/out (of), smuggle in(to)/out (of)
- 6 go in(to)/out (of), fly in(to)/out (of), cycle in(to)/out (of),
get in(to)/out (of), move in(to)/out (of)
- 11 run in(to)/out (of), jump in(to)/out (of), run in(to)/out (of),
dash in(to)/out (of), storm in(to)/out (of)
- 16 slip in(to)/out (of), sneak in(to)/out (of), check in(to)/out (of),
drag in(to)/out (of), pump in(to)/out (of)
- 21 pack in(to)/out (of), let in(to)/out (of), fill in(to)/out (of), pull in(to)/out (of),
push in(to)/out (of)
- 26 rush in(to)/out (of), crawl in(to)/out (of), leak in(to)/out (of),
work in(to)/out (of), lock in(to)/out (of)
- 31 squeeze in(to)/out (of), dig in(to)/out (of)

In many respects, spatial **in** is the opposite of spatial **out (of)**. It includes in its meaning the notion of a container and of an entity that either moves *into* the container or is already *inside*. As you saw from the examples above, the container can be just *anything that surrounds the given object or its location*.

In pairs paraphrase the words and the verbs you are not very familiar with or add nouns that collocate/go with the verbs.

2.4 IN: sets or groups viewed as containers



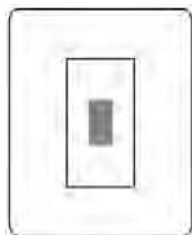
in bunches – in the crowd – in five – in heaps/in piles – in pairs, in small groups – in five – stick in with

- 1 Put these books /... .. of ten.
- 2 I would like you to work or ... small ... of five.
- 3 She arranged the flowers of seven.
- 4 One hundred students took the test, and only one or 20%
passed.
- 5 Tell us frankly: “Are you going to us, or are you afraid?”
- 6 The terrorist disappeared

Glosses: 3 *bunches*: groups, sets – 5 *stick in with*: continue to stay with us (notwithstanding difficulties)

In combination with some verbs, **in** implies not only inward motion but also change in the form of the moving entity.

2.5 IN: situations, circumstances as containers



breathe in – closed in on – handed in – jammed in – pilots ... in – put in – run ... in – stepped in – sworn in – trade ... in – turn ... in – zeroed in on

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1 The problem was quickly solved when the chairman | st..... |
| 2 I'm sorry to say, but you won't make it even if you a lot of work. | p |
| 3 With so much smog in the air, it is difficult to deeply. | br..... |
| 4 Moving slowly the lions their victim. | cl..... |
| 5 The speaker cleverly the growing frustration of the audience. | z..... |
| 6 We should have taken the motorway, now we may be for hours. | j |
| 7 In thick fog, an on-board computer ... a plane ... to land. | p |
| 8 When you ... your new car ..., don't drive too fast or recklessly. | r |
| 9 The President was the day before yesterday. | sw |
| 10 The car is too old now, so we'll have to ... it | tr..... |
| 11 If you don't want these tickets, ... them | t |
| 12 All students' papers should be by Friday. | h |

Glosses: **1** *intervened in an argument or difficult situation* – **2** *not make it: not succeed, not manage* **3** *smog: bad, polluted air consisting of smoke and fog (sm+og);* – **4** *closed in on: moved from all sides closer to their victim* – **5** *focused, concentrated on the issues that frustrate people* – **6** *be jammed in: be blocked, unable to move due to too big a number of cars* – **7** *pilots in: directs, organizes the landing* – **8** *drive your car for the first thousand km* – **9** *was sworn in < swear in: promised in an official ceremony to respect the laws of the country* – **10** *sell the car as partial payment for a new one* – **11** *give the tickets back and get refunded (get the money back)*

Not only physical conditions but also *activities, situations, circumstances, relations* which affect a given object are conceived as containers. As the examples illustrate, one can view as a container the state of being *ruined, used or presented* in a certain way as well as the states or motions from one state into another.

Exetext 4

cash in – check in – clock in, clock out – cramming in – dig in – go in for – pay in – phase in – put in – (had a) run-in – sign in – sucked in/pulled in

- 1 Can I stop by the bank to my pay cheque? c
- 2 In factories workers before work and after work. cl/cl.....
- 3 The official will want to see your passport when you ch
- 4, children, before the food gets cold! Enjoy your meal. D
- 5 Personally, I would not such a deal. Turn it down. g
- 6 It's not by facts and dates that one becomes more intelligent. cr
- 7 Before I realised they were having an argument I got/
... .. . s/p.....
- 8 Participants when they arrive, so that we know who stays here. s
- 9 the new programme now so that people get adjusted to it. Ph.....
- 10 If you want to pass the exam you had better some more work. p
- 11 If you 5,000 dollars, the account will yield 7% interest. p
- 12 Sue had a with her boss yesterday. r.....

Glosses: **1** *cash in: get money for my check – 2 register when arriving on the job – 3 when you arrive as a guest – 4 (informal) start eating with enthusiasm – 5 not be interested in, not accept such an offer; refuse it – 7 drawn in – 9 introduce step by step, gradually – 11 yield: produce, give, provide – 12 a run-in: a quarrel, an argument*

2.6 IN: psychological, physical states viewed as containers

came in – cramming in – in your endeavours – in favour of – in fear/in agony/in despair/in distrust – give in – hammered in – in haste/in a rush/in panic – in good health/condition/shape – is/fell in love – in mind – in his right mind – in raptures – in the same boat – in spirit – take ... in – in tears

- 1 Despite her old age, granny is ... *good h.../c.../sh... .*
- 2 Did you know (that) Mary is/fell ... *l... with John.*
- 3 As there was little hope, they waited ... *f.../... a.../... d.../... d... .*
- 4 He left ... *h.../... a r.../... a p... as he had to be there by 9:00 a.m.*

- 5 She was very upset and ... *t...* and asked me for help.
- 6 Keep going, we'll be with you ... *sp...*
- 7 Many teachers are not ... *f...* ... all this violence on TV and neither
am I.
- 8 He's so naïve, it is easy to *t...* him
- 9 Thank you very much, your advice *c...* ... very handy.
- 10 Despite all the pressure put on her, she would not *g...*
- 11 I'm afraid we are all ... *the s... b...*
- 12 No-one ... *h... r ... m...* would talk such nonsense.
- 13 What you have suggested is very important, I'll keep it ... *m...*
- 14 Little Tom was ... *r...* when he saw the hamster.
- 15 I wish you a lot of success ... *your en...*, she said.
- 16 In history studies lots of facts have to be just *h...*

Glosses: **1** *despite: notwithstanding* – **8** *to deceive him, to make him believe sth that is not true* – **9** *handy: was very useful, convenient* – **10** *not agree, change her mind* – **11** *all facing the same difficulties* – **12** *who is mentally normal* – **14** *was delighted, extremely happy*; *hamster: a small animal kept as a pet by children* – **15** *in your efforts* – **16** *facts have to be learned, enter so to say in your mind, through repeated efforts (the way one hits a nail repeatedly with a hammer)*

Any state, knowledge, condition, attitude or activity – whether physical, emotional, mental or intellectual – which affects a given object – is seen as a container. As the examples illustrate, one can view as containers the states of being old, of loving, admiring, doubting, thinking, knowing or being healthy, which explains why in is used.

Exetest 5

cut in on – get ... in – put in – in speaking – throw in – tune in – worked in

- 1 If you want to keep up your English, regularly to the BBC. t
- 2 “Wait a minute,” he the speaker, “I disagree with you.” c
- 3 Even with a few jokes, the speech was still dull. w
- 4 She was speaking like a machine gun, I couldn't ... a word g
- 5 He managed to a few comments here and there. thr
- 6 I would have liked to a few words, but there was no way. p
- 7 He makes lots of mistakes sp

Glosses: **1** *keep up*: keep at the same level of proficiency; *listen to* – **2** *he interrupted* – **3** *included*; *dull*: boring, monotonous – **5** *he managed*: he was able – **6** *to say a few words, but it was impossible*

Language, the flow of speech, is viewed as a container and entering into this ‘container’ explains the use of **in**.

Exetext 6: in, a very common prefix

inbreeding – *incentive* – *income* – *indoors* – *informing* – *inherit* – *injected* – *in-laws* – *inmates* – *innate* – *in-patient* – *input* – *inquiries* – *inroads* – *insert* – *inside* (adv.)/*inside* (noun) – *insider* – *intake*

- | | |
|--|------------|
| 1 Too much ... was what finally destroyed many royal families. | inbr..... |
| 2 Low-... families are entitled to get extra financial benefits. | inc |
| 3 I always become nervous when my ... come to visit. | in-l |
| 4 Our firm receives several ... a week about our activities. | inq..... |
| 5 The yearly ... of the candidates at the university is limited. | int..... |
| 6 As he is an ... he cannot be impartial in his judgement. | ins |
| 7 Robots have made considerable ... in car manufacturing. | inr |
| 8 Why stay ... when the weather is so lovely? Let's go for a walk. | ind..... |
| 9 She seems to know the ... of the building. | ins |
| 10 Is language ... or is it acquired? | inn..... |
| 11 I have pleasure ... you that you've been selected as a candidate. | inf |
| 12 According to Uncle George's will, I am destined to ... his farm. | inh..... |
| 13 To alleviate the pain, the doctor ... a small dose of morphine. | inj..... |
| 14 When I was young we had to ... coins before dialing a phone number. | ins |
| 15 In prison the more violent ... are kept in solitary confinement. | inm..... |
| 16 Because of medical tests he had to register at the hospital as an | in-p..... |
| 17 Generally there is a close connection between ... and output. | inp..... |
| 18 If you don't reward people, they have no ... to work hard. | inc |

Glosses: **1** *inbreeding*: marriage among closely related people – **2** *are entitled*: have the right – **3** *in-laws*: relatives by marriage (father-in-law, mother-in-law) – **7** *have made inroads*: are used more and more – **9** *know the inside*: know very well – **10** *innate*: present at birth, be born with; *acquired*: learned – **13** *reduce, ease* – **14** *coins*: pieces of

metal used as money – 16 a patient who has to stay in the hospital for some time – 18 incentive: encouragement, interest

In- (and its variants *im-*, *il-*, *en-*, *em-*) is an extremely common prefix with similar meanings to the ones of the preposition or particle. Many go back, however, to Latin and French and are far from *transparent*. The /' / indicates that the stress is on the following syllable.

2.7 IN: key

2.1 In: entering or being inside a container

1 garden, room – 2 bin – 3 tea-pot, kettle – 4 swimming pool, lake – 5 school, church, mosque, synagogue – 6 hall, department store – 7 wall – 8 teeth < tooth – 9 mouth – 10 nose – 11 face – 12 jeopardy

Exetest 1

1 bed – 2 coffee – 3 space – 4 sky – 5 essay – 6 (news)paper – 7 picture – 8 rags – 9 white/pink – 10 a sweat – 11 hand/bush

Exetest 2

1 leaking in – 2 drill ... in – 3 flocked in – 4 slip in/sneak in – 5 smuggled in – 6 packed in – 7 moved in – 8 pop in – 9 turn in – 10 pulled in – 11 rushed in – 12 stormed in

Exetest 3

1 walk in – 2 welcomed in – 3 gets in – 4 fence in – 5 broke in – 6 swept in – 7 take in – 8 soak in – 9 hauled in – 10 plugged in – 11 caved in on

Names of containers are often omitted with 'PVs + in'

1 come in – 2 Call ... in/Ask... in – 3 get in – 4 Let ... in – 5 led ... in – 6 came in – 7 bring in – 8 check in – 9 Send in – 10 drop in/pop in/call in – 11 squeeze in

2.4 In: sets or groups viewed as containers

1 in heaps/in piles – 2 in pairs, groups – in bunches – 4 in five – 5 stick in with – 6 in the crowd

2.5 In: situations, circumstances are also containers

1 stepped in – 2 put in – 3 breathe in – 4 closed in on – 5 zeroed in – 6 jammed in – 7 pilots ... in – 8 run in – 9 sworn in < swear in – 10 trade ... in – 11 turn ... in – 12 handed in

Exetest 4

1 cash in – 2 clock in, clock out – 3 check in – 4 Dig in (informal = start eating) – 5 go in for – 6 cramming in – 7 sucked in(to)/pulled into – 8 sign in – 9 Phase in – 10 put in – 11 pay in – 12 (had) a run-in

2.6 In: psychological/physical states viewed as containers

1 in good health/condition/shape – 2 in love – 3 in fear/in agony/in despair/in distrust – 4 in haste/in a rush/in panic – 5 in tears – 6 in spirit – 7 in favour of – 8 take ... in – 9 came in – 10 give in – 11 in the same boat – 12 in his right mind – 13 in mind – 14 in raptures – 15 in your endeavours – 16 hammered in

Exetest 5

1 tune in – 2 cut in on – 3 worked in – 4 get ... in – 5 throw in – 6 put in – 7 in speaking

Exetest 6

1 inbreeding – 2 income – 3 in-laws – 4 inquiries – 5 intake – 6 insider – 7 in-roads – 8 indoors – 9 inside – 10 innate – 11 informing – 12 inherit – 13 injected – 14 insert – 15 inmates – 16 in-patient – 17 input – 18 incentive

2.8 Expand and test your knowledge of 'in'

1 Explain in your own words the meaning of the following.

1 to clock in – 2 to close in on – 3 to lock oneself in (>< out) – 4 to swear in (swore in, sworn in) – 5 to soak in – 6 to smuggle in – 7 to flock in – 8 to get in – 9 to let in – 10 to fill in – 11 to cash in – 12 to slip in/sneak in – 13 to be jammed in – 14 to take sb in – 15 to be taken in by a crook – 16 to hand in one's homework – 17 to stick in with a person or group

2 What are the differences/similarities between the following pairs?

1 to learn/to cram in – 2 to sleep/to sleep in – 3 to come in/to storm in – 4 to pay/to pay in – 5 to give/to give in – 6 to buy/to buy in – 7 to ask sb/to ask sb in – 8 to enter/to break in – 9 to send/send in – 10 to run/run in (a new car) – 11 to work/work oneself in – 12 to sit/to sit in (on) – 13 to check/check in

3 Explain by synonyms/antonyms, paraphrases, etc. the meaning of:

1 inbreeding – 2 to fall in love – 3 an insider – 4 an inmate – 5 an inquiry – 6 one's in-laws – 7 an (annual) income – 8 innate – 9 to insert – 10 to work in pairs – 11 in spring – 12 in rags – 13 to be in raptures

4 Show through examples that the following can be considered as containers.

1 a street – 2 the sky – 4 dresses – 5 a hand – 6 one's mouth – 7 the sun(shine) – 8 a season – 9 a year – 10 one's state of health – 11 one's feelings (despair, love)

5 Provide the phrasal verbs with in corresponding to the following paraphrases.

- | | |
|--|---------------|
| 1 to try to learn sth with energy and willpower, often repeating it | cr |
| 2 to deceive a person | t |
| 3 to come in in great numbers | fl |
| 4 to go and live in another apartment, building | m |
| 5 to prepare the motor of a new car by driving sensibly, not too fast (US: break in) | r |
| 6 to attract large numbers of people | p .....p..... |
| 7 to listen to a radio station | t |

- 8 to catch (a criminal) and bring him to a police station r..... h.....
- 9 to start a program slowly and gradually ph.....
- 10 to start eating energetically because one is hungry d.....
- 11 to lodge (foreign) students t.....
- 12 to give a car to a dealer in partial payment for a new one tr

6 Explain the similarities/differences between the following opposite pairs of words.

1 breathe in/out – 2 hand in/out – 3 smuggle in/out – 4 lock in/out – 5 walk in/out – 6 fill in/out – 7 take in/out – 8 work in/out – 9 send in/out – 10 squeeze in/out – 11 cut in/out

7 Explain the meaning of the following and why in is used.

- 1 Our friends *moved in* for a fortnight.
- 2 I was unable to *put in/get in* a word.
- 3 The radar *piloted* the plane *in*.
- 4 I first have to *work* myself *in(to)* the situation or job.
- 5 Your remark *fitted in* nicely *with* the other comments.
- 6 You should *throw in* as many suggestions as possible.
- 7 Eventually the police had to *step in*.
- 8 The students organized a *sit-in* in the rector's office.
- 9 The professor allowed me to *sit in* (*on* the course).
- 10 The police were/are *closing in* on the hooligans/thugs.

8 Explain in some detail the situations or circumstances in which you could say the following.

- 1 Unfortunately the boss *is not in*.
- 2 What time do I have to *check in* for my plane?
- 3 Please *drop in* any time.
- 4 The boys are quarelling, mother will have to *step in*.
- 5 We were *jammed in* on the motorway.
- 6 Hunted down by tens of policemen, the criminal *turned himself in*.

- 7 I'm afraid we're all *in the same boat*.
- 8 There was no way of *getting a word in*.
- 9 Straw hats *are in* again.
- 10 You'll *be in for it*, boy!
- 11 He knows the *ins and outs* of the affair.
- 12 My *in-laws* are coming tonight.
- 13 The beggar was *in rags*.

9 Complete the following collocations.

to bring in – to cram in/drill in – to fence in – to put in – to slip in/put in – to smuggle in – to take in – to throw in – to trade in – to zero in on

- 1 food, vitamins, medicine; refugees, students (often in return for payment)
- 2 an old car, a TV set, a fridge (when buying a new one)
- 3 facts, words, names, dates, information (for an examination)
- 4 cameras, drugs, cigarettes, whisky, equipment (into another country)
- 5 a (vegetable) garden, cattle, a field, a property, an orchard
- 6 a remark, a comment, a word, a suggestion (in a conversation)
- 7 people's needs, the market, new information, a question
- 8 a remark, an allusion, a few jokes, a reference (in a conversation)
- 9 the harvest; money, profit, a good return, a lot of money
- 10 a lot of thinking, effort, planning, time (in a project)

You could adopt the following approach:

First read both parts several times, then cover up the verbs and on the basis of the nouns find the verbs; then cover up the collocations and with the verbs as a clue recall as many nouns or expressions as possible.

2.9 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'in''

1 Explain in your own words the meaning of the following.

- 1 to record by means of a machine (a clock) the time of arrival (clock **in**) or departure (clock **out**) at a factory
- 2 to come closer to sb/sth and from different sides in order to attack or seize him/it
- 3 to lock oneself in a room, a car, a building (so as not to be disturbed); cf. to lock (oneself) out
- 4 to ask a person to swear an oath when he is appointed to a new, official position (a president)
- 5 to absorb the liquid the object is in (a sponge, clothes before washing, rice)
- 6 to bring goods illegally into a country, not declaring them to the customs (>< smuggle out)
- 7 to come in in great numbers (like a flock of birds, sheep, goats)
- 8 to enter by means of sth
- 9 to allow sb to enter
- 10 to complete a form, a questionnaire; also: to fill out
- 11 to give a cheque to a cashier and get money for it
- 12 to enter somewhere quietly so as not be noticed
- 13 to be blocked in a traffic jam so that one can hardly move
- 14 (a) to put up a person, to allow him to stay in your home for some time, often for money
(b) to deceive sb (often passive form): to *be taken in* by sb
- 15 (cf. 14b: by a dishonest person)
- 16 to give one's homework to the teacher
- 17 to stay with a person or group (often notwithstanding some difficulties)

2 What are the differences/similarities between the simple verbs and the verbs + in?

- 1 *to learn*: to acquire more knowledge through study or experience
to cram in: to learn facts, dates, data through repeated and intensive memorizing
- 2 *to sleep in*: to sleep longer and later than usual (for instance on weekends)
- 3 *to walk in*: to enter a place in a normal way, at a normal pace
to storm in: to rush in, often while shouting angrily and loudly
- 4 (b) to put money into a bank account
- 5 (b) to accept the point of view or the requirement/demand of the other person

- 6 (b) to acquire a good supply of something
- 7 (b) to ask sb to come into your house, office (cf. to *ask out* sb = to go and eat in a restaurant)
- 8 (b) to enter a house, a building by force in order to steal
- 9 (b) to send in a report, an article for consideration and/or approval
- 10 (b) to drive and prepare the motor of a new car for normal use and speeds
- 11 (b) to get acquainted and used to a new job
- 12 (b) to enter and show opposition to people in charge to organize (a sit-in); to be allowed (as a visitor) to attend a meeting, a course
- 13 (b) to report one's arrival at a hotel, at the airport

3 Explain by synonyms/antonyms, paraphrases, etc. the meaning of:

- 1 procreation between closely related people; by extension: selecting people who were trained on the spot and who are not likely to bring in new ideas because they think like their boss(es)
- 2 a person who loves another person and who wants to marry him/her or to live together
- 3 a person who as a member of a group knows a lot about it and the way it functions
- 4 a prisoner
- 5 asking for help or information about sth/sb
- 6 one's relatives by marriage (father-in-law, mother-in-law)
- 7 the money one earns in a year
- 8 inborn: present in a person from birth
- 9 to put sth in between two things (a word, a paragraph)
- 10 in groups of two people
- 11 the season (after winter, before summer) which starts on March 21
- 12 in poor, torn (< tear), dirty clothes
- 13 to be delighted, extremely happy

4 Show through examples that the following can be considered as containers.

They can all be used with **in**: to **meet** sb *in* the street, the clouds *in* the sky; to be **dressed** *in* blue, white; to **keep** sth *in* one's mouth, hands, etc.

5 Give the phrasal verbs with in corresponding to the following.

1 to cram in – 2 to take in sb (often passive) – 3 to flock in – 4 to move in – 5 to run in – 6 to pack in/pull in – 7 to tune in – 8 to run in/to haul in – 9 to phase in – 10 to dig in – 11 to take in students – 12 to trade in

6 Explain the similarities/differences between the following opposite pairs of words.

The pairs 1 through 5 are antonyms/opposites at least in one of their meanings; the verbs in 6 are synonyms.

From pair 7 on there are some major differences between the pairs:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 7 <i>take in:</i> | lit. give hospitality to sb; one can also <i>take in</i> food, vitamins, etc. |
| <i>take out:</i> | a dog, an animal; also: money from an account; a quotation from a book |
| 8 <i>work in:</i> | (insert) a joke in a story |
| <i>work/figure out:</i> | a plan, a solution, a method |
| 9 <i>send in:</i> | troops, the army; a completed (application) form, a picture for a competition |
| <i>send out:</i> | invitations, letters; to produce: smoke |
| 10 <i>squeeze in:</i> | (in a suitcase) objects, shoes, etc. |
| <i>squeeze out:</i> | juice (of an orange or lemon); money from sb, from one's parents |
| 11 <i>cut in:</i> | to overtake a car and move back sharply and closely to its lane; to interrupt a speaker |
| <i>cut out:</i> | an article, a picture from a paper; the motor of your car can <i>cut out</i> ; <i>to cut out</i> fats and sugars from one's diet = not eat them any more |

7 Explain the meaning of the following and why in is used.

- our friends came to visit us and stayed *in* the house (viewed as a container) for two weeks
- the person wanted to say sth, but the speaker(s) did not give him a chance to interrupt him i.e. to *get into* his flow of words (viewed as a container)
- the radar took over the role of the human pilot and made it possible for the plane to land (*on* the runway *in* the airport)
- the work or situation are viewed as containers; in order to understand them well one has to *enter* into them i.e. one has to work oneself *into* them

- 5 the remark was in perfect harmony with the other comments; the latter are conceptualised as forming a bunch, a set *into* which the remark fits perfectly
- 6 expressing one's suggestions is presented as if one threw/put suggestions *in(to)* a container
- 7 the situation (a fight, a row) is viewed as a container *in(to)* which the police have to *enter*
- 8 the students go and *sit in* the office to show their disagreement with the rec-tor's policies
- 9 the course and its participants are viewed as a container, as a set, and the professor allowed me to *enter* the group
- 10 the police surrounded the hooligans/criminals and got nearer to them so as to arrest them

8 Explain in some detail the situation/circumstances in which a person could say the following.

- 1 Unfortunately the boss is not in his office (the latter is viewed as a con-tainer).
- 2 How long before the departure of my plane do I have to report at the airport (container)?
- 3 Please come and visit us whenever you can (our house: container).
- 4 Mother will have to intervene in the difficult or heated situation (viewed as a container).
- 5 The traffic jam is viewed as a container in which one is locked in.
- 6 The criminal went to the police station himself (he *turned* himself *in*).
- 7 The boat is the spatial container representing a difficult, unpleasant state of affairs.
- 8 It was impossible to say a word, i.e. to *enter into* the flow of words (the latter is viewed as a container).
- 9 Straw hats are in fashion (fashion is conceptualized as a container in which many people 'enter' so to say).
- 10 A difficult situation (viewed as a container) is awaiting you.
- 11 He knows the details about the affair.
- 12 The family of one's wife or husband that enters into the partner's family through the new legal situation.
- 13 The beggar was dressed in dirty, old, torn clothes.

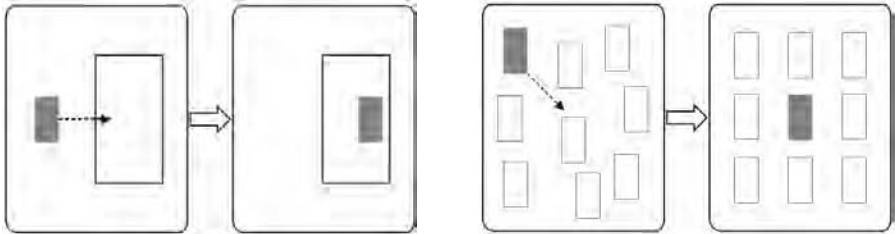
9 Complete the following collocations and study them both ways.

- 1 to take in – 2 to trade in – 3 to cram in/drill in – 4 to smuggle in – 5 to fence in – 6 to throw in – 7 to zero in on – 8 to slip in/put in – 9 to bring in – 10 to put in

3 INTO is entering a container

Unlike **in**, **into** always functions as a preposition, never as an adverb/particle/prefix. Furthermore, **into** always implies motion (physical, psychological or mental change) as approximately 30 examples illustrate in this section. An object or entity which is located outside a container/surface *moves* inside, *into* it.

3.1 INTO: motion into a container



beat ... into – broke into – bumped into – get into (2x) – smuggled ... into – throw ... into

- 1 I can't ... this dress any more: it's far too small. g.....
- 2 ... the scraps of paper ... the waste-paper basket. Thr.....
- 3 First you ... the eggs ... the flour. b.....
- 4 She managed to ... a first-rate university. g.....
- 5 For years the gang had ... narcotics ... the States. sm.....
- 6 Thieves ... my office during the weekend. br.....
- 7 The drunkard ... a lamppost and broke his nose. b.....

Glosses: 3 *beat*: mix vigorously with a utensil (fork); *flour*: fine powder (to bake bread, cakes) obtained by grinding cereals – 4 *excellent, of good quality* – 6 *enter illegally and by force* – 7 *bump into*: hit, strike; *lamp post*: a big post or pole with a light on top, along a street

Since **into** is only a preposition, the container is *always* mentioned explicitly whereas with **in** (which functions as an adverb or as a preposition) the container/surface is frequently not mentioned as it is generally known from the context allowing it to be omitted.

Sometimes the use of **into** implies that the entity or moving object hits another (sentence 7).

3.2 INTO: change is motion from one state into another

Replace the verbs or expressions in italics by ‘phrasal verbs + into’.

bumped into – burst into tears – convert ... into – digging into – dip into – fell into line – get into trouble – (re)lapse (again) into – looked into – lured into – poking your nose into – tricked ... into – turns into – went into

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1 When she heard the news, she <i>started crying</i> . | b |
| 2 If you continue this way, you will <i>have problems</i> . | g |
| 3 As usual, she <i>mentioned/talked about</i> too many details. | w..... |
| 4 You will receive an answer once I have <i>examined</i> the matter. | l |
| 5 Stop <i>interfering with</i> my affairs, will you. | p |
| 6 When the temperature drops, this gas <i>becomes</i> a solid. | t |
| 7 When the teacher raised his voice, all the children <i>obeyed</i> . | f |
| 8 Though the economy is bad, I managed not to <i>take any money out of</i> my savings. | d |
| 9 You know, I <i>happened to meet</i> Peggy the other day. | b |
| 10 In Egypt you can <i>exchange euros for</i> Egyptian pounds. | c..... |
| 11 If we don't help Bob, he will <i>return to</i> his stealing/bad habits. | r |
| 12 The tax people are <i>ploughing through</i> the materials they have confiscated in the headquarters of the bank. | d |
| 13 With plausible sounding arguments, the con man <i>convinced</i> my friend into entering this crazy scheme. | tr..... |
| 14 Promising some sweets, the witch <i>attracted</i> Hansel and Gretel into her home. | l |

Glosses: **6** *drops:* goes down – **7** *raised, increased the level, spoke louder* – **12** *are examining heaps of documents very carefully, meticulously* – **13** *a con man: a person who cheats others by using all kinds of tricks; scheme: plan* – **14** *US: candy: sweets, chocolate; a witch (in fairy tales): a woman supposed to have magic, evil powers*

States (habits, emotions, etc.) are viewed as containers. When one passes from one state *into* the other, one uses the motion preposition **into**.

In pairs pick out a few verbs and explain/justify the use of **into**.
 Ex. 9 **bump into sb:** meeting sb (unexpectedly, suddenly) is like *entering into* the presence, the world of that person (viewed as a container)

Exetest

bluff ... into – break into – cut into – drawn into – drilled into – fell into – get into (2x) – grew into – hammered ... into – poured into – pumped ... into – put ... into – paid into – turned into – voted into

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1 You must the habit of answering letters more promptly. | g..... |
| 2 She disgrace/disfavour. | f..... |
| 3 After years of discipline and hard work he a capable manager. | t..... |
| 4 He was unable to ... the board ... letting him carry out the plan. | bl..... |
| 5 The company ... billions of dollars ... the aid programme. | p..... |
| 6 His great talents allowed him to the spotlight. | br..... |
| 7 It took 3 cups of coffee to wake up and ... me ... the right frame of mind. | p..... |
| 8 My teachers ... the basic principles ... our heads day after day. | h..... |
| 9 The data collecting project a monster. | gr..... |
| 10 When the coup became known people the streets. | p..... |
| 11 Good manners were us from our earliest childhood on. | dr..... |
| 12 The bride and groom are always first to the wedding cake. | c..... |
| 13 Young boys always seem to trouble. | g..... |
| 14 I am not going to be your argument. | dr..... |
| 15 To benefit from a retirement fund, you have to have it for years. | p..... |
| 16 It amazed all of us how a crook like him could get office. | v..... |

Glosses: **1** promptly: immediately, without delay – **3** turned into: became – **4** bluff ... into: to try to deceive by presenting oneself as capable, clever, strong; the board: committee, council of people in control of a company – **6** to become well-known, famous; to get great public attention – **7** frame of mind: mental state, disposition, mood – **10** a coup: sudden, violent and often illegal change of government – **11** drilled into: taught (< teach) through systematic and repeated exercises – **12** a woman and a man on or just before their wedding day – **16** crook: a dishonest person, a criminal

In groups explain/justify the use of **into** and paraphrase the words you are not familiar with.

- Ex. 1 **get into**: acquiring the habit of promptly answering letters is like entering into a container;
 2 **fall into**: disgrace/disfavour are states viewed as containers in which one can fall.

3.3 INTO: key

3.1 Into: motion into a container

1 get into – 2 throw ... into – 3 beat ... into 4 get into – 5 smuggled ... into – 6 broke into – 7 bumped into

3.2 Into: change is motion from one state into another

1 burst into tears – 2 get into problems – 3 went into – 4 looked into – 5 poking your nose into – 6 turns into – 7 fell into line – 8 dip into – 9 bumped into – 10 convert ... into – 11 (re)lapse, lapse again into – 12 digging into – 13 tricked ... into entering – 14 lured ... into

Exetest

1 get into – 2 fell into – 3 turned into – 4 bluff ... into – 5 pumped ... into – 6 break into – 7 put ... into – 8 hammered ... into – 9 grew into – 10 poured into – 11 drilled into – 12 cut into – 13 get into – 14 drawn into – 15 paid into – 16 voted into

3.4 Expand and test your knowledge of ‘into’

1 Explain the following in your own words.

- 1 I'll *look into* the matter.
- 2 You'll *get into* trouble.
- 3 They *fell into line*.
- 4 He was *voted into office*.
- 5 *Put/Pay* some more money *into our account*.
- 6 Peggy is *growing into* a beautiful lady.
- 7 I had to *dip into* my savings.
- 8 They *smuggled* these drugs *into* the country.
- 9 He *bluffed* himself *into* that high position.
- 10 He *tricked* her *into* giving him all her savings.
- 11 He *lapsed into* drinking again.

2 Explain the differences and/or similarities between the following pairs.

- 1 to meet sb/to bump into sb
- 2 to enter/to burst into the house
- 3 to inquire/to poke one's nose into
- 4 to participate in/to get drawn/sucked into
- 5 to teach/to hammer the facts into sb's head
- 6 to convince sb of/to trick sb into
- 7 to give money/to pump money into
- 8 to come/to pour into the streets
- 9 to bring into/to smuggle into

3 Explain the following verbs using all the means at your disposal, gestures included.

1 to break into – 2 to lure into – 3 to drill into – 4 to grow into – 5 to (re)lapse into – 6 to dig into

3.5 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'into''

1 Explain the following in your own words.

- 1 I'll examine the matter carefully (as if I were able to open the matter and to look *into* it).
- 2 Trouble, a difficult situation is seen as a container *into which* one will get or *enter*.
- 3 They obeyed, accepted or '*entered*' the orderly behaviour suggested or imposed.
- 4 People voted for him so that he could *enter* (into) the office.
- 5 The account is viewed as a container, that's why one puts money *into* the account.
- 6 'The beautiful lady' is viewed as a container full of quality *into which* Peggy enters gradually.
- 7 The savings are seen as a container *into which* one dips or enters to take money out.
- 8 The drugs are outside the country (viewed as a container) and the smugglers bring them *into* it.
- 9 The high position is presented as a container *into which* the person enters by bluffing (pretending he is the right person).

- 10 He cheated her to the extent that she entered *into* the state of giving her savings to him.
- 11 He went back to drinking i.e. he entered *into* a state of drinking again.

2 Explain the differences and/or similarities between the following pairs.

- 1 bump into: to meet sb accidentally and unexpectedly
- 2 burst into: to enter at great speed and with force (cf. to storm in(to), dash in(to))
- 3 to poke one's nose into: to try to get information or to meddle in sb's affairs though that person is not willing to provide the information one is after or one would like to know
- 4 to get drawn/sucked into: to get involved/to participate into sth against one's will
- 5 to hammer ... into: to teach/to learn sth with great effort and in a repeated way
- 6 to trick sb into: to deceive a person by convincing him/her to do sth though it will be against his/her interest
- 7 pump money into: to pour/put a lot of money into
- 8 to pour into the streets: to enter massively, in great crowds
- 9 to smuggle into: to bring goods, drugs, valuable things into a country without declaring them

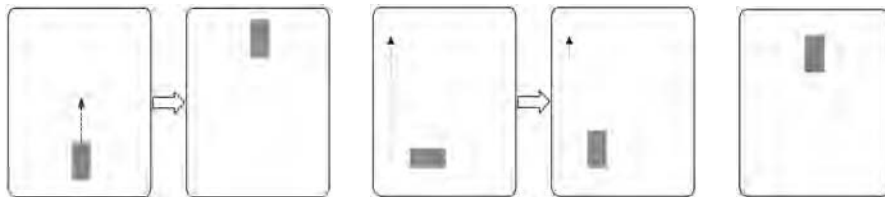
3 Explain the following verbs using all means at your disposal.

- 1 to enter into a house or property with force and without permission, usually with intent to steal
- 2 to attract (especially children or animals) into entering somewhere by deceit, promises
- 3 to teach (mainly facts, data) by force and repetition
- 4 to gradually become a different person as one gets older
- 5 to go back to one's old and bad habits (smoking, drugs, drinking, etc)
- 6 to dig: to break up earth with a machine, a spade, one's hands; make a hole; as a result, figuratively: to dig into a problem, a situation, etc. = to examine thoroughly, closely, from all sides

4 UP is positive verticality

Up is the most frequently used English particle. Its frequency can be explained by the fact that an *upward* position or motion, both physical and especially abstract, is in a very special way part of our daily experience. In this section there are some 170 instances of phrasal verbs/compounds with **up**. As you will notice, several phrasal verbs/compounds carry more than one meaning and could therefore also figure in more than one subsection.

4.1 UP: position at a high place or moving up to a higher one



carried ... up – comes up – go up – got up – picking up – put ... up (2x) – put up/put ... up – sit up – stood up – throws up – toss up

- 1 Could you ... and see whether the baby is asleep? g.....
- 2 ... the bottle ... on the shelf so that the children can't reach it. P.....
- 3 The children walked along the beach, ... shells. p.....
- 4 Those who want to go along, ... your hands p.....
- 5 In the summer the sun ... at about 4.30 am. c.....
- 6 Let's ... to see who should start. t.....
- 7 As there was no lift the boy ... our heavy suitcases ... (the stairs). c.....
- 8 Our oldest has digestive problems and ... all the time. thr.....
- 9 Hurry children, it's high time you ... ! g.....
- 10 Where shall we ... the tent/... the tent ...? p...../p.....
- 11 He was so weakened by his illness, he couldn't even s.....
- 12 We all ... when the president entered. st.....

Glosses: **I** go up, here: upstairs – **6** decide on two alternatives; also: throw a coin in the air – **8** vomits – **9** got out of bed – **11** weakened: without strength

In pairs explain the less usual words/verbs and show how the verbs exemplify the feature of **up** mentioned above.

be up

be up – has been up – is up/is ... up

- 1 Where is Dave? – He must in his room. Should I call him? b
- 2 My office two floors/... two floors i
- 3 Is Joan still sleeping? – No, she for an hour. h

Glosses: **1** *be up, on a higher floor* – **2** *is ... up: two floors higher than a given place* – **3** *has been up: out of bed*

Typically i.e. spatially **up** means motion from a lower to a higher place. However, **up** may also refer to situations where there is no real change of place (cf. the examples with **to be**), only the position of the object mentioned is higher than others or it changes from a horizontal to a vertical position.

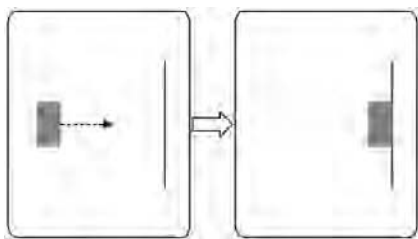
Exetext 1

blown up – climbed up – help ... up – jack up – lift up – pulled up – put ... up/pinned ... up – rolled up, washing up – sprang up – went up

- 1 The room looks much nicer since you've ... new pictures p/p.....
- 2 If you that box, you will find a message underneath. l
- 3 The audience fell silent when the curtain w.....
- 4 At the noise of the blast we all from our seats. spr.....
- 5 We can't cross the river because the bridge has been bl
- 6 The thief the ladder in the backyard and got into the apartment. cl.....
- 7 He the sleeves of his shirt and started the dishes. r/w.....
- 8 When the old man fell to the ground, I gave him a hand to ... him h
- 9 She called a mechanic to the car and change the flat tyre/ US: tire. j
- 10 We lowered a rope from the balcony and the pieces of furniture that we couldn't get into the lift/US: elevator. p

Glosses: **2** underneath: below, under the box – **4** blast: explosion – **5** cross: go to the other side; blown up: destroyed by an explosion – **9** to raise a car by means of a device called a jack – **11** had accumulated, increased considerably – **10** rope: a very thick, strong string (made of twisted nylon, wire, etc)

4.2 UP (to): aiming at or reaching a goal, an end, a limit



bring ... up to – call up – come up – fed up with – fill ... up – follow up – give up – go up to – is up to – leave ... up to – link ... up – pick ... up – ran up to – ring ... up – rushed up to/hurried up to – start ... up – takes up – up to – walked up to/came up to

- 1 Several passengers /... .. the waiting bus. r...../h.....
- 2 At the sight of the stranger the children their mother. r.....
- 3 the window and see what is going on. G.....
- 4 Could you ... the parcel my house? br.....
- 5 and see us during the holidays, will you? C.....
- 6 She me/... .. me and asked how to get to the station. w...../c.....
- 7 It you to decide what to do next. i.....
- 8 We'll ... it you to decide what to do. l.....
- 9 On cold wet mornings I cannot ... my old car st.....
- 10 She promised to ... you ... tomorrow. r.....
- 11 The salesman took out his mobile (US: cell) to his office. c.....
- 12 How do I ... the new printer ... with the computer? l.....
- 13 What time shall I ... you ... at the station? p.....
- 14 ... the kettle ... with water. F.....
- 15 I don't want this huge desk here; it too much space. t.....
- 16 By Monday you should have read page 50. u.....
- 17 I am this boy pestering my children. I'll call the police. f.....

- 18 After lots of attempts I finally managed to smoking
5 years ago. g
- 19 A good start is fine, but now you have to your initiative. f

Glosses: 3 going on: happening – 6 walked up to: approached; walked towards, close to – 11 mobile (telephone) – 12 link up: connect – 15 enormous table with drawers to write on – 16 by Monday: before; up to: reaching but no more than – 17 fed up with: have enough of; pestering: annoying, disturbing – 18 attempt: a try – 19 to continue, expand, improve the initiative

Up does not only denote spatial upward motion. In some cases, particularly when **up** combines with **to**, it means *motion towards* the place where somebody/something is or might be. The latter becomes the *goal* or the *limit* of the motion.

The examples (14–18) show that **up** can also be used when a given location, usually a container (14–15), becomes ‘completely full’. The latter use is, however, often extended to *situations, habits, emotional states* and the likes where the ‘moving entity’ also reaches their boundaries or limits. (cf. 4–5)

In pairs paraphrase the new words and show how **up (to)** contributes to exemplify the meaning ‘*moving towards the goal, limit or end*’.

Exetext 2

come up against – coming up – crack up – do up – drove up to – face up to – hook up with – is ... up to – keep up with – keep up – keep ... up, give up – laid up with, catch up with – ran up to – sign up for – take up – tied up with – turn up – upset – upshot – up to – upturn

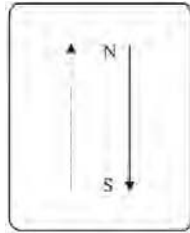
- 1 The taxi driver the front door of
the house. *came by car* dr
- 2 Well done! the good work! *maintain* K.....
- 3 You will certainly strong opposition. *meet with, face* c.....
- 4 Wouldn't you want to a computer
course? *enrol in* s.....
- 5 Unemployment is partly economic
slumps. *connected with* t
- 6 Our daughter wants to music and
maths (US: math). *learn* t
- 7 Why do we always have to the
Joneses? *compete with* k

8 the day before yesterday we had lovely weather.	<i>until/till</i>	U
9 I wonder what tricks our neighbour again.	<i>is preparing</i>	i
10 Firms look for people who will not under stress.	<i>break down</i>	cr
11 The ... of the election was a Democratic landslide win.	<i>the final result</i>	u
12 Could you the TV a bit, please.	<i>increase (volume)</i>	t
13 In the hotel the artists a bill of 2000 euros.	<i>spent an amount</i>	r
14 You have no choice but to the problem.	<i>accept, deal with</i>	f
15 I have to buy a present, my wife's birthday is	<i>approaching</i>	c
16 ... your spirits ..., don't, it can't get any worse.	<i>do not abandon</i>	K
17 She got all ... when she learned what happened.	<i>worried, unhappy</i>	u
18 I'm (the) flu and have heaps of work to c... ..	<i>still have ... to do</i>	l
19 It's icy cold outside, you'd better your coat.	<i>fasten, button up</i>	d
20 The Internet allows its users to others around the world.	<i>be connected</i>	h
21 This year there has been a definite ... in business.	<i>an upward trend</i>	u

Glosses: **5** *slumps: bad economic periods* – **7** *to behave the same way as all other people* – **9** *tricks: plans with the intention to deceive* – **11** *upshot: (final) result, outcome; a landslide win: a very large majority of votes in an election* – **16** *remain enthusiastic, keep a positive state of mind* – **18** *laid up < lay (up); usually passive: be unable to work, have to stay in bed; catch up with: still have to do work which should normally have been done* – **19** *you'd better = you had better = it would be better if ...*

North is UP, south is DOWN

are ... up in – go up to – lives up in – upstate (in the northern part of the state of New York)



- 1 Where are your parents? –They Scotland now. a.....
- 2 In ... New York life is not as hectic as in New York city. u
- 3 Part of the family Manchester now. l
- 4 Let’s leave London and Edinburgh for the weekend. g

The above examples are closely related to their basic spatial meaning. As the north is now conventionally represented on maps at the top of the page, it is normal that this geographical area in a country is viewed as **up** whereas the southern part is considered **down**.

4.3 UP: moving to a higher degree, value or measure

We have seen that it is only possible to talk about abstract domains in concrete terms. Furthermore, we categorize these abstract domains by assigning values to many of them, and we (have to) do it spatially, along vertical lines: this is the case e.g. of *temperatures, social and professional ranks, attitudes, knowledge, opinions, feelings, possession, accessibility of things, degrees of intensity, etc.*

We should further remember that in western cultures and perhaps everywhere in the world:

- ↑ what increases or what is good, beautiful, cheerful, big, strong, solid, courageous/positive, is on top of this vertical dimension or **up** (or high);
- ↓ what decreases or what is bad, ugly, sad, small, weak, fragile, discouraging or negative is at the bottom of this vertical line of evaluation or **down** (or low);

Exetext 3

brush up – cheered up – dressed up – drum up – face up to – freshen up – going up – gone up – grown up – keep up with – lived up to – look up to – make up – put ... up – speak up – step up

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1 Judy's temperature is, she may be getting (the) flu. | g..... |
| 2 The landlord has ... the rent ... again. | p..... |
| 3 I need to my English. How should I go about it? | br..... |
| 4 At 16, Joe is very mature, he has really very fast. | gr..... |
| 5 Jane is as clever as she is nice and all her classmates her. | l..... |
| 6 Her latest novel has really our expectations. | l..... |
| 7 After work she took a shower to before going out to the party. | fr..... |
| 8 The price of petrol and oil has again. | g..... |
| 9 She when she saw the presents her friends had brought. | ch..... |
| 10 All the girls for the solemn occasion. | dr..... |
| 11 As granny is slightly deaf, you have to a bit. | sp..... |
| 12 Don't run away, you have to this challenge. | f..... |
| 13 The demand is such that the factory has to production. | st..... |
| 14 The businessman tried to enthusiasm for his joint venture. | dr..... |
| 15 You're walking too fast, I can't you. | k..... |
| 16 John is hopeless: he hesitates all the time and cannot his mind. | m..... |

Glosses: **2** has raised – **3** improve the quality; how should I proceed – **4** has reached a high level of development – **5** they have great respect for her, have her in high esteem – **6** corresponded to what we expected – **9** was happier – **10** put on nice dresses – **11** speak louder – **12** accept and deal with this difficult task courageously – **13** increase – **14** try by all kinds of means to get people enthusiastic – **15** follow, go as fast as you – **16** he is unable to decide/to take decisions

The basic spatial meaning of **up** can be extended to indicate higher degrees or standards, e.g. a higher (body) temperature, higher prices or quality, a higher level of knowledge, demands, conditions, speed or higher values in general. Metaphorically or figuratively, all these and many others are like 'a higher place or location'.

In pairs explain the less common words and show why verbs + **up** are used in the above sentences.

- Ex. 1 If you have flu, usually your body temperature rises, gets to a higher level, thus it **goes up**. Furthermore, you often have to lie down, you **are laid up** (cf. Ex. 2,18)
- 2 The rent – money paid monthly by a tenant – increases regularly, i.e. the landlord **puts up** the rent, it **goes up**
- 3 If you improve your knowledge of English, you **brush it up**, i.e. you may even reach a *higher* degree of knowledge

Exetest 4: Replace the italicised expressions by phrasal verbs.

beef up – bolster up (US: bolster) – brought up – build up – catch up with – fix ... up – fouled up – heating up – keep ... up – loosen ... up – marked up – perk up – polish up – speed up – stir up – stood up for – tighten up on

- | | | |
|--|----------------------------|----------|
| 1 I really need to my English style. | <i>improve (the style)</i> | p |
| 2 They are wondering how to production. | <i>make faster, raise</i> | sp..... |
| 3 Our leader gave a fiery speech to our morale. | <i>strengthen</i> | b |
| 4 Work hard and you will soon the best students. | <i>know as much as</i> | c..... |
| 5 She has her children entirely on her own. | <i>raised/reared</i> | br |
| 6 Would it be possible to ... my car ... by lunch time? | <i>repair</i> | f |
| 7 This diet will allow you to your strength in no time. | <i>develop</i> | b |
| 8 She is still very weak but it seems she will soon | <i>regain vigour</i> | p |
| 9 The police had to their border patrol presence. | <i>increase</i> | b |
| 10 The butcher his prices by 25% and sold more. | <i>raised</i> | m |
| 11 The new law is likely to racial hatred. | <i>cause/lead to</i> | st..... |
| 12 The leader boldly the rights of minority groups. | <i>defended</i> | st..... |
| 13 He was tense and thought that a drink would ... him | <i>relax</i> | l |

- 14 The motorway was completely by
the car crash. *brought into chaos* f.....
- 15 What can I do to ... my English ...? *keep as proficient* k.....
- 16 The government want(s) to security. *make stricter* t.....
- 17 Competition in business is still *intensifying* h.....

In pairs take turns covering up one part of the exetest and coming up with the other.

- Ex. to *improve* the quality of your English =;
to *raise* productivity =, etc.

Show how the particle **up** expresses the meaning ‘moving to a higher degree, value, measure’.

- Ex. 2 **speed up**: *raise the quantity* of goods to be produced; manufacture more goods, faster
4 **catch up**: reach a *higher level* of knowledge so as to know as much as the other students

Exetest 5

brightened up – doing... up/US: fixing ... up – flare up – is up with – make up – match up with – piling up – swell up – take up

- 1 When I told him I had good news for him, he br.....
- 2 After he sprained his ankle it quickly started to sw.....
- 3 She would rather be late than not her face. m.....
- 4 We bought an old house and are ... it ... now. d.....
- 5 You’ve been selected, don’t miss this opportunity, the challenge! t.....
- 6 If he says the wrong thing to his wife an argument is likely to fl.....
- 7 I wonder what my car. i.....
- 8 Inspector Maigret remarked that the suspect’s story did not with the policeman’s report. m.....
- 9 During his prolonged absence work had been p.....

Glosses: 1 got more cheerful; cheers: shouts of joy – 2 injured, twisted his ankle; swell: become larger – 3 putting cosmetics on – 4 are repairing and decorating it – 6 to start suddenly, violently but not lasting (like a fire); is likely: it is probable that – 7 what is wrong, not working properly – 8 suspect: a person suspected of having committed a crime; the content of the story did not fit with – 9 accumulating

Exetest 6

upbringing – upgrade – uphill – uplift – upright – uprising – ups and downs – upsurge – uptight – up-to-date – upturn – upward

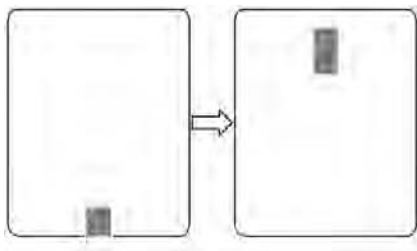
- 1 I tried to convince him to leave the project, but it was *an ...* struggle. uph
- 2 You are right: there is no reason to be so ... about the whole thing. upt
- 3 My father’s ... behaviour enabled him to endure many struggles. upr
- 4 Due to the slump the chances of ... promotion in business is limited. upw.....
- 5 Some children are not given a good ... by their parents. upbr
- 6 When I am tired or down and need a bit of an I take a few days off. upl
- 7 CNN is known for bringing ...-...-... news. up-t.....
- 8 Life has its , some good days, some bad. ups
- 9 There is an ... in people’s interest in tennis during Wimbledon. ups
- 10 There has been an ... in computer sales in the last couple of years. upt
- 11 The university resolved to ... its academic standards. upgr
- 12 When there is social unrest in a country there is always the danger of an ... against the government. upr

Glosses: **1** *very difficult* – **2** *unhappy, worried* – **3** *honest, honourable* – **4** *a promotion to a higher level* – **5** *education* – **6** *when I need to raise my spirits* – **9** *a sudden increase, upward movement* – **10** *an increase, upward movement* – **11** *resolved: decided, determined; to raise the standards or level* – **12** *a rebellion, a fight against those in power*

In pairs paraphrase less common words and explain why **up** is used in the above compounds.

- Ex. 1 **an uphill struggle** is as difficult as walking, climbing up a steep hill
 5 **upbringing**: to *bring up* a child is to help it reach a *higher* social, moral and intellectual standard or level

4.4 UP: higher up is more visible, accessible, known



bring ... up – coming up with – cook up – crops up – draw up – dream up – made up – put ... up – set up – setting up – show up – take ... up – think up – turned up/showed up

- 1 It's not enough to projects, you also have to carry them out. dr.....
- 2 Sotheby has ... one of Van Gogh's paintings ... for sale. p.....
- 3 He was determined to ... the issue ... at the meeting. br.....
- 4 Your friend has a talent for idiotic ideas. c
- 5 If you do not mind, I'll ... your suggestion ... with the director. t.....
- 6 The mistake in the fabric won't once the dress is made. sh
- 7 The government will a committee to look into the plane crash. s
- 8 Do you know how many people at the party last night? t...../sh.....
- 9 The multinational company is new branches in Asia. s
- 10 The architect was asked to plans for a new house. dr.....
- 11 You'll see, he is a liar and will be trying to an excuse again. c
- 12 He must have the story from beginning to end. m.....
- 13 Don't stay; if something important, I'll call you. cr.....
- 14 When confronted with his crime he could not a reasonable alibi, so he decided to tell the truth. th.....

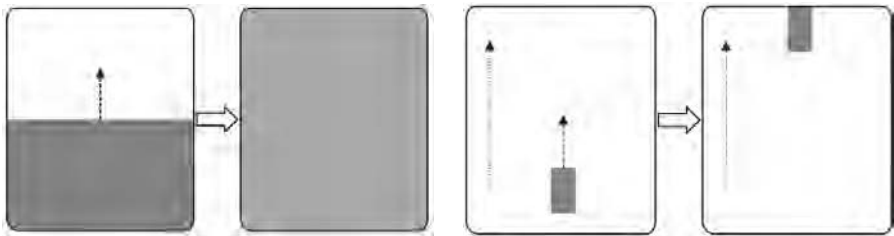
Glosses: **2** offered for sale at an auction – **3** to mention the point – **4** suggesting – **5** talk to the director about it – **8** create, establish – **9** starting, creating – **10** make – **11** to invent (often in order to deceive) – **12** invented, imagined – **14** alibi: evidence of his innocence (that he was somewhere else and not at the scene of the crime)

When the entity is at or comes to a higher level or location, it is noticed more easily. This is not only true of concrete objects but also of abstract entities to which one draws sb's attention. Therefore a feature that is characteristic of many verbs with **up** is that what was hidden or unknown becomes visible or known.

In turn paraphrase the words you were unfamiliar with and explain the presence of the feature 'visible, accessible, known' in the verbs with **up**.

- Ex. 2 by **putting up for sale** a Van Gogh painting, it was brought to the attention of the public
- 3 **bringing up** an issue: the board's attention is drawn to a specific point, thereby making it *more visible, known* (= visible figuratively)

4.5 UP: covering an area completely/reaching the highest limit



beat up – bottle up – burnt ... up – cleaning up – dried up – eaten up – is up – messed up – mixed up – sell up/US: sell off – slice ... up – tensed up/uptight – write ... up

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 It is high time you started the mess in your bedroom. | cl..... |
| 2 Who has the cake? I would have liked to try a piece. | ea..... |
| 3 Give me the main ideas and I'll ... them ... for you. | wr |
| 4 He has ... all the paper ... in the garden. | b |
| 5 I'm sorry, but time! Please hand in your answer sheets! | i |
| 6 Could you ... the cucumber .../... the meat ...? | sl..... |
| 7 It has been so hot that the pond has | dr |
| 8 The typist has (completely) my CV (Curriculum Vitae). | m |
| 9 She should relax more, she gets too easily /... . | t |
| 10 Could you help me, I've got all with the timetable. | m |
| 11 They were forced to everything to pay off their bills. | s..... |

- 12 The gang of hooligans the innocent bystander. b.....
- 13 He was boiling, but he managed to his anger and look calm. b.....

Glosses: **1** mess: disorder – **8** has organized the CV the wrong way – **9** very nervous, anxious – **10** bored, unhappy – **11** put up everything for sale – **12** hit and kicked seriously – **13** was boiling: was extremely angry; to suppress, not to show his anger

Often **up** indicates not only that an abstract boundary or limit has been reached but also that a *whole* object has been affected by an action. When you say to someone “Cut up the meat!”, you are telling him to cut the *whole* piece of meat into slices (or cubes), not just part of it. In the same way, in the sentence *Mary gave up the idea of leaving*, **up** points to the ‘level’ at which the idea is considered uninteresting and is thus given up/abandoned.

Exetext 7

broke up – button up – coughed up – cover up – held up – hurry up, drink up – hush up – shake up – shut up – throwing up – up-to-the-minute – use up, fill up

- 1 The lorry was by a gang of young thugs. h.....
- 2 The speaker told the noisy audience at the back of the hall to b.....
- 3 Some people talk and talk and are unable to sh.....
- 4 CNN manages to give you an ...-...-...-... account of events. u.....
- 5 We all think the government is trying to the scandal. c.....
- 6 The family tried to the fact that Bob had committed suicide. h.....
- 7 The tycoon a million dollars to save his team from disaster. c.....
- 8 My wife will all the petrol in the car and forget to ... it ... in time. u..... f.....
- 9 We worry about the baby her food. thr.....
- 10, we have to leave, your beer. H..... dr.....
- 11 The party finally around 4.30 am. br.....
- 12 After the ministerial bribe scandal the prime minister had to his government. sh.....

Glosses: **1** was prevented from moving and robbed; thugs: aggressive criminals – **2** stop showing their animosity; to be silent – **5** hide usually by deceit – **6** keep secret, un-

known – **7** tycoon: very wealthy/rich person; paid the money rather unwillingly – **10** hurry up: do things more quickly; drink up: drink the rest, empty the glass completely – **11** broke up: ended (completely) – **12** bribe: money, presents, etc. given in return for help, for a favour; shake up: make major changes

You have already noticed that **up** sometimes expresses arrival at the very top, i.e. the highest point along a vertical path, or at the boundary of the given location, whatever it may be. The notion of top or boundary can be metaphorically extended to any abstract limits. This being the case, one can use **up** to say that an activity has come to an end (has reached the time limit) or has affected the whole object (has reached the object's boundaries).

Exetest 8: Replace the italicised expressions by phrasal verbs.

blow up – clear up/US: clear off – drives ... up the wall – end up/wind up – make up for – put up with – round up – seal up – sized ... up – smashed up (2x) – wash up – worked up

- 1 I never thought I would *finally settle down* in Japan. e..... /w.....
- 2 He *quickly formed an opinion of* her before answering her question. s.....
- 3 *Take away all the dishes from* the table please. Cl.....
- 4 The police managed to *catch* the terrorists. r.....
- 5 John *demolished* his car last night but he himself has only a few bruises. sm.....
- 6 If you want to *close* the envelope it will cost extra. s.....
- 7 Rioters *seriously damaged* cars and shops leaving a trail of destruction. sm.....
- 8 My emancipated wife expects me to *do the dishes*. w.....
- 9 I have decided not to *tolerate* this nonsense any longer. p.....
- 10 He will *be furious* when he sees what you have done. bl.....
- 11 This teacher is so slow and so boring that he *makes me furious*. dr.....
- 12 Does it make sense to get all *nervous* about such trifles? w.....
- 13 How are you going to *compensate for* the losses? m.....

Glosses: **5** bruises: superficial injuries (of the skin) – **7** rioters: wild and violent protesters; trail: a path, track of destruction – **12** trifles: unimportant things

Exetest 9

break up – fills up – mop up – pack up – screw up – split up – stuff ... up – swallow ... up – sweep up – swot up for/US: bone up on

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1 Apparently one in every three marriages is likely to | br..... |
| 2 The student had to three subjects in one week. | sw..... |
| 3 After the violent quarrel his wife told him to his bags and leave. | p..... |
| 4 I was so embarrassed I just wanted the ground to open and ... me | sw..... |
| 5 After being friends for years they lost interest in each other and | spl |
| 6 When famous scholars give lectures, the hall always | f..... |
| 7 If you don't study enough you are likely to your exams. | scr |
| 8 After the air bombardment the army tanks were sent in to the remainder of the resistance. | m..... |
| 9 A group of workers gathered early in the morning to after the street party the night before. | sw..... |
| 10 An easy but not very elegant way to save money is to ... yourself ... with food when you are visiting a friend. | st |

Glosses: **1** is likely: it is probable that ...; to end, to finish – **2** to study very hard in a very short time – **5** separated, each went his way – **6** a scholar: a person who has a deep knowledge of an academic subject – **7** (informal) mess up, handle very poorly – **8** to kill or capture the remaining or last pockets of enemies that still fought on – **9** remove everything with a brush – **10** to eat a lot, too much even

In pairs explain the new words and verbs and justify the use of **up**.

4.6 UP: Key

4.1 Up: position at a high place or moving up to a higher one

1 go up – 2 Put ... up – 3 picking up – 4 put ... up – 5 comes up – 6 toss up – 7 carried ... up – 8 throws up – 9 got up – 10 put up/put ... up – 11 sit up – 12 stood up < stand

1 be up – 2 is up/is ... up – 3 has been up

Exetest 1

1 put ... up/pinned ... up – 2 lift up – 3 went up – 4 sprang up < spring – 5 blown up – 6 climbed up – 7 rolled up, washing up – 8 help ... up – 9 jack up – 10 pulled up

4.2 Up to: reaching a goal, an end, a limit

1 rushed up to/hurried up to – 2 ran up to – 3 Go up to – 4 bring ... up to – 5 Come up – 6 walked up to/came up to – 7 is up to – 8 leave ... up to – 9 start ... up – 10 ring ... up – 11 call up – 12 link ... up – 13 pick ... up – 14 Fill ... up – 15 takes up – 16 (read) up to – 17 am fed up with – 18 fed up with – 18 give up – 19 follow up

Exetest 2

1 drove up to < drive – 2 Keep up – 3 come up against – 4 sign up for – 5 tied up with – 6 take up – 7 keep up with – 8 Up to – 9 is up to – 10 crack up – 11 up-shot – 12 turn up – 13 ran up – 14 face up to – 15 coming up – 16 Keep ... up, give up – 17 upset – 18 laid up with, catch up with – 19 do up – 20 hook up with – 21 upturn: an upward movement

North is up, south is down

1 are ... up in – 2 upstate – 3 lives up in – 4 go up to

4.3 Up: moving to a higher degree, value or measure

Exetest 3

1 going up – 2 put ... up – 3 brush up – 4 grown up – 5 look up to – 6 lived up to – 7 freshen up – 8 gone up – 9 cheered up – 10 dressed up – 11 speak up – 12 face up to – 13 step up – 14 drum up – 15 keep up with – 16 make up

Exetest 4

1 polish up – 2 speed up – 3 bolster (up) – 4 catch up with – 5 brought up < bring – 6 fix ... up – 7 build up – 8 perk up – 9 beef up – 10 marked up – 11 stir up – 12 stood up for – 13 loosen ... up – 14 fouled up – 15 keep ... up – 16 tighten up on – 17 heating up

Exetest 5

1 brightened up – 2 swell up – 3 make up – 4 doing ... up – 5 take up – 6 flare up – 7 is up with – 8 match up – 9 piling up

Exetest 6

1 uphill – 2 uptight – 3 upright – 4 upward – 5 upbrining – 6 uplift – 7 up-to-date – 8 ups and downs – 9 upsurge – 10 upturn – 11 upgrade – 12 uprising

4.4 Up: higher up is more visible, accessible, known

1 dream up – 2 put ... up – 3 bring ... up – 4 coming up with – 5 take ... up – 6 show up – 7 set up – 8 turned up/showed up – 9 setting up – 10 draw up – 11 cook up – 12 made up – 13 crops up – 14 think up

4.5 Up: covering an area completely/reaching the highest limit

1 cleaning up – 2 eaten up – 3 write ... up – 4 burnt ... up – 5 is up – 6 slice ... up – 7 dried up – 8 messed up – 9 tensed up/uptight – 10 mixed up – 11 sell up/sell off – 12 beat up – 13 bottle up

Exetest 7

1 held up – 2 button up – 3 shut up – 4 up-to-the-minute – 5 cover up – 6 hush up – 7 coughed up – 8 use up, fill ... up – 9 throwing up – 10 Hurry up, drink up – 11 broke up < break – 12 shake up

Exetest 8

1 end up/wind up – 2 sized her up – 3 Clear up – 4 round up – 5 smashed up – 6 seal up – 7 smashed up – 8 wash up – 9 put up with – 10 blow up – 11 drives (me) up the wall – 12 worked up – 13 make up for

Exetest 9

1 break up – 2 swot up for (US: bone up on) – 3 pack up – 4 swallow ... up – 5 split up – 6 fills up – 7 screw up – 8 mop up – 9 sweep up – 10 stuff ... up

4.7 Expand and test your knowledge of ‘up’

Work in groups of two or three, compare and discuss the answers to arrive at optimal solutions.

1 Explain the main senses of ‘up’ to a friend who does not know them.

2 Create collocations with (a) the literal and/or (b) figurative senses of the following verbs.

1 to pick up – 2 to fill up – 3 to go up – 4 to speed up – 5 to bring up – 6 to blow up – 7 to patch up – 8 to mop up – 9 to shake up – 10 to put up – 11 to look up (to) – 12 to throw up

3 Read the following collocations carefully.

We should remember that we understand and speak in groups of words, not in single words. It is therefore important to associate words, to create collocations or groups of words that occur frequently together and which come spontaneously to the mind of a native speaker.

1 to keep up	one’s relations, one’s foreign languages, one’s good (physical) shape
2 to make up	a story, an excuse, a list; a form, an application, a questionnaire
3 to step up	action, production, an activity, output, attacks on the enemy
4 to draw/chart up	a plan, a document, a scheme, a contract
5 to drum up	support, enthusiasm, customers, interest for a cause
6 to back up	a vehicle; an applicant, a claim with evidence, a file in the computer, a friend in a difficult position
7 to blow up	a bridge; a problem, an event
8 to patch up	one’s trousers; one’s differences, a quarrel, an argument
9 to tighten up	a bolt, a screw; control, discipline, security, safety measures
10 to wrap up	a present; a job, a deal, a discussion, an agreement
11 to clear up	the mess, the disorder; a misunderstanding, a mystery
12 to put up/pin up	a poster, a notice, a message, an offer
13 to build up	one’s strength, one’s self-esteem, a solid reputation, one’s condition

- 14 *to dig up* old pottery, dirt, nasty allegations for ruining someone's reputation; evidence, unknown facts

Once you are through with one or several close readings of the collocations:

- (a) cover up the nouns on the right and check how many you can associate/collocate spontaneously with each verb; add some of your own too; then,
 (b) cover up the verbs and see if you can associate them spontaneously with several nouns.

4 *Replace the verbs or verbal expressions with verbs + up.*

1 to *educate*, *rear* or *raise* one's children – 2 to *invent* an excuse, a story, things – 3 to *phone* a friend – 4 to *mention* a point at a meeting – 5 to *repair* a machine – 6 to *enrol(l)* in a course – 7 to *respect*, to *admire* a person – 8 to *get* suddenly very *angry* – 9 to confuse several things – 10 to try to *hide* or *keep* sth secret – 11 to *be nervous* – 12 to *compensate for* sth – 13 to *separate* from one another, e.g. husband and wife – 14 to *begin* a company – 15 to *increase* prices – 16 to *defend* the rights of minorities

5 *What differences/similarities are there between the following pairs?*

1 to burn/to burn up? – 2 to clean/to clean up? – 3 to stand/to stand up (against)? – 4 to come/to come up for, against? – 5 to stir/to stir up? – 6 to make sth/to make sth up? – 7 to cough/to cough up? – 8 to cook/to cook up? – 9 to mark/to mark up? – 10 to follow/to follow up? – 11 to bottle/to bottle up? – 12 to be fed/to be fed up? – 13 to dress/to dress up? – 14 to speak/to speak up?

6 *Explain the following phrasal verbs in your own words; in some cases point out the sense(s) added by up.*

1 to face up to – 2 to perk up – 3 to size sb up – 4 It is up to me/to him/to her/to us to ... – 5 to loosen up – 6 to jack up a car – 7 to line up – 8 He didn't turn up at the meeting. – 9 to crack up under the pressure – 10 Who could back me up? – 11 I can no longer put up with it. – 12 He tore the letter up. – 13 She was all upset. – 14 Why is he so uptight? – 15 to hold sth upside down – 16 It's an uphill struggle. – 17 He got all worked up. – 18 There is some uplifting news. – 19 with ups and downs

7 Fill in the verbs, explain their main sense(s) and weld them with the nouns into spontaneous collocations.

A. break up – brighten up – clear up – dry up – flare up – swell up

B. hush up – make up – mess up – set up

- A.1 A fire, a conflict, an argument, a bout of fever can suddenly .../start. fl
- 2 The sky, the future, one’s life, one’s stay can .../get much better, nicer. br
- 3 An illness, bad weather, infections, situations can .../improve. cl.....
- 4 One’s eyes, a sprained ankle, one’s face can .../get much bigger. sw
- 5 A friendship, a spacecraft, a marriage, a meeting can .../end. br
- 6 A pond, a river, a lake, funds, foreign aid can .../stop existing. dr
- B.7 You can a room, a kitchen, your life, the economy, a project. m
- 8 You can/start a factory, an experiment, a committee, a joint venture. s.....
- 9 You can/invent a story, an excuse; your face, your bed. m
- 10 We may want to/keep secret this affair, that scandal, this event. h

8 Paraphrase/explain which of the following verbs have either a negative or a positive connotation and in some cases explain why.

1 to put up with – 2 to brighten up – 3 to cheer up – 4 to be fed up with – 5 to make up/cook up – 6 to be uptight/tensed up – 7 to be upset – 8 to mess up/to screw up – 9 to swot up – 10 to hush up – 11 an upswing – 12 to be worked up – 13 to live up to sb’s expectations – 14 to smash up – 15 to loosen up – 16 to be mixed up

9 Fill in the verbs and weld them with the nouns into tight expressions/collocations.

One can/You can:

- | | | |
|------------------|---|--|
| 1 br...../p..... | your knowledge, a foreign language | <i>improve</i> |
| 2 cl..... | a mystery, a misunderstanding, a mess, a disease | <i>explain,
solve</i> |
| 3 bl..... | a bridge, a bomb, a car, an event, an affair | <i>explode,
exaggerate</i> |
| 4 l..... | an address, a word, a phone number | <i>search for,
try to find</i> |
| 5 c..... | blood, money, the truth | <i>produce
(unwillingly)</i> |
| 6 th...../c..... | an alibi, a story, an excuse, an example, a plan | <i>invent</i> |
| 7 br..... | a suggestion, a point, an idea, a problem; children | <i>mention, to
raise</i> |
| 8 st..... | a new company, an argument, a venture, an engine | <i>begin</i> |
| 9 p..... | a person, a language, some gossip, an idea | <i>fetch, hear,
fetch, learn
by chance</i> |

Choose from: *blow up – bring up – brush up/polish up – clear up – cook up – cough up – look up – pick up – start up – think up/cook up*

10 Paraphrase and/or explain the use of 'verb + up' in the following sentences.

add up – count up – save up – shaping up – sober up – stir up – tighten up on/end up – wrap up – wrapped up

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1 An accountant's job is to columns of figures. | a |
| 2 The teacher asked a student to the number of absentees. | c |
| 3 Next year I intend to enough money for a good holiday. | s |
| 4 I'm glad that your project is so nicely. | sh |
| 5 After drinking too much at the party he took some coffee to try to | s |
| 6 Some people love to trouble and thrive when there is conflict. | st |

- 7 The shopkeeper asked if she would like him to her purchase. wr
- 8 He got so in his work he forget to phone us the good news. wr
- 9 The Prime Minister told his ministers that they would have to spending or the government would in debt. t/e.....

11 Divide the following group of words in pairs of (near)-synonyms and add a few appropriate nouns to each pair.

cover up – button up – eat up – foul up – make up – pin up – polish up – ring up – stand up for – step up – sweep up – wind up in – write up

- 1 hush up/cover up an affair, a scandal, a matter
- 2 mess up/.....
- 3 brush up/.....
- 4 speak up for/
- 5 clean up/.....
- 6 cook up/.....
- 7 shut up/.....
- 8 gobble up/.....
- 9 end up in/.....
- 10 put up/.....
- 11 call up/.....
- 12 speed up/.....
- 13 type up/.....

12 Paraphrase/explain and/or justify the use of UP in some of the phrasal verbs.

- 1 to screw up/to mess up one’s exams
- 2 to be/get all wrapped up in one’s work
- 3 to be all psyched up before an exam
- 4 to pep up sb who is down
- 5 to mix up people’s names
- 6 to stiffen up a collar
- 7 to team up with a colleague

- 8 to take up sb on his suggestion
- 9 to fasten up, do up a coat, a dress
- 10 to tidy up one's room
- 11 to cook up an excuse
- 12 to think up new ways of communicating
- 13 to close up a road
- 14 to slice up the meat/the bread
- 15 to need a thorough medical check-up

13 Explain and/or justify the use of the phrasal verbs with up.

- 1 to *type up* a manuscript
- 2 the sauce is *thickening up*
- 3 to *pop up* to a friend's house
- 4 a storm/trouble is *brewing up*
- 5 prices are *shooting up*
- 6 violence has *flared up* again
- 7 to try to *patch up* a broken marriage
- 8 to *whip up* cream; support/enthusiasm
- 9 to *be up against* serious competition
- 10 to *rake up* an old quarrel
- 11 to *book up* a hotel well in advance

4.8 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'up''

2 Create collocations with (a) the literal and/or (b) figurative senses of the following verbs.

- 1 *pick up*: (a) a pen, a stone, a bag, a parcel, the receiver
(b) a person (give him a lift), an SOS signal, dirty words, a language, news
- 2 *fill up*: (a) a swimming pool, a lake, the tank of a car
- 3 *go up*: (a) the stairs, the hill, the ladder, to the top of the mountain
(b) temperature, certain standards of evaluation, prices; (go up) in flames

- 4 *speed up*: (a) a train, cars, traffic speed(s) up
(b) production, the rate of work
- 5 *bring up*: (a) a suitcase upstairs
(b) children (educate, raise, rear them); a question, a point at a meeting
- 6 *blow up*: (a) a bridge, a house, a tyre, a balloon, a picture
(b) oneself (lose one's temper, get angry), an affair, an incident
- 7 *patch up*: (a) a shirt, a pullover, trousers, a car, a wall
(b) a quarrel, a disagreement, differences, a patient in hospital
- 8 *mop up*: (a) a floor; a liquid, coke, juice, milk (that was spilt), with a mop or a sponge
(b) pockets of resistance, the enemy; a project
- 9 *shake up*: (a) a bottle, a medicine, a blanket, a pillow
(b) a government, an organization, a school system
- 10 *put up*: (a) one's hands, a fence, a flag, a poster, an advertisement on the board
(b) the rent, prices, a fight, for sale, a tourist (for the night)
(c) to put up *with*: a person (bear, stand, suffer him/her)
- 11 *look up (to)*: (a) from one's desk, in the sky
(b) a word (in the dictionary), a phone number, an address, a plane schedule
(c) look up *to*: a teacher, a leader, a friend, one's parents
- 12 *throw up*: (a) a ball, dust, a coin before a game (toss up)
(b) food (vomit), (toss up), one's hands (in despair)

4 Replace the verbs or verbal expressions with up.

1 to bring up – 2 to make up/cook up – 3 to ring up/call up – 4 to bring up – 5 to fix up – 6 to sign up for – 7 to look up to – 8 to blow up/flare up – 9 to mix up – 10 to hush up/cover up – 11 to be uptight/tensed up – 12 to make up for – 13 to split up – 14 to start up – 15 to mark up – 16 to stand up for

5 What differences/similarities are there between the following pairs?

- 1 (a) *burn*/(b) *burn up*: (a) destroy by fire;
(b) completely or make a fire more intense
- 2 *clean*/*clean up*: (a) to take away the dirt, the mess
(b) thoroughly, completely; a city (of criminals, corruption, vice, drug traffic)
- 3 *stand*/*stand up*: (a) to be in an upright position
(b) (– – *for*) to support, to be in favour of and defend sth/sb
- 4 *come*/*come up*: (a) to move towards a person, a speaker
(b) (– – *for* > < against) to be in favour of/to defend/ > < to be opposed to
- 5 *stir*/*stir up*: (a) to move around, back and forth with a utensil in a liquid
(b) to cause trouble, resentment, frustration
- 6 *make*/*make up*: (a) to create, manufacture, put parts together
(b) to put powder, lipstick on one's face;
(c) to invent
(d) (– – *for*): to compensate
(e) (is made up of): formed, constituted
(f) to make it up with sb: end a quarrel with sb
- 7 *cough*/*cough up*: (a) to push out air, blood, phlegm violently (when one has (the) flu)
(b) to give money rather unwillingly
- 8 *cook*/*cook up*: (a) prepare food by heating it
(b) to invent (often with the intent of deceiving)
- 9 *mark*/*mark up*: (a) to put a mark, a name, a sign on sth
(b) to put a higher price on a product
- 10 *follow*/*follow up*: (a) to come, go after sb (in time, spatially)
(b) to continue to act further, keep an eye on progress
- 11 *bottle*/*bottle up*: (a) to put liquids into bottles
(b) to keep one's emotions inside oneself, not show them
- 12 *be fed*/*be fed up*: (a) to be given food
(b) to have enough of sb/sth
- 13 *dress*/*dress up*: (a) to put on clothes
(b) to put on nicer clothes than usual
- 14 *speak*/*speak up*: (b) to speak louder; also: to express clearly and boldly what one thinks about sth

6 Explain the following phrasal verbs in your own words; in some cases point out the sense(s) added by the particle up.

- 1 to show courage, determination in dealing with/tackling a new situation (to reach the same level)
- 2 to recover from an illness; the person's weakness is more and more replaced by strength
- 3 to look quickly but carefully at sb in order to assess/form an opinion about him/her
- 4 It is my/his/her, ... responsibility
- 5 to relax, to be less uptight
- 6 to raise a car or other objects by means of a jack, a tool to put (higher up)
- 7 several people standing in such a way that they form a line
- 8 the person did not come (to the meeting/appointment) (he/she did not become visible, show up)
- 9 to break down mentally, nervously (completely)
- 10 who could help me, support, recommend me when applying for a job
- 11 I can no longer live or work in that situation; I cannot stand it any longer (having reached the limit)
- 12 he violently pulled/tore the letter into several pieces
- 13 she was very/extremely worried, unhappy
- 14 why is he so nervous, tense, under pressure
- 15 hold the object/container the wrong way: the top is at the bottom and vice versa
- 16 it will not help to do sth, the struggle is a lost cause, a waste of time
- 17 he got very nervous with (intense) feelings of excitement, anger, anxiety (limit, excess)
- 18 there is some good, positive, cheerful news (higher)
- 19 with good, pleasant (**up**) and less good, unpleasant, bad (**down**) feelings

7 Fill in the verbs, explain their main sense(s) and weld them with the nouns into tight collocations.

- A. 1 flare up – 2 brighten up – 3 clear up – 4 swell up – 5 break up – 6 dry up
B. 7 mess up – 8 set up – 9 make up – 10 hush up

8 Paraphrase/explain which of the following verbs have either a negative or a positive connotation and in some cases explain why.

- 1 to put up with: to stand, to be able to cope with sb/sth unpleasant
- 2 to brighten up: to be happier, more cheerful (get 'higher' emotionally)

- 3 *to cheer up*: to feel happier (more positive = higher)
 4 *to be fed up with*: to have enough of sth unpleasant (completely, the limit, excess)
 5 *to make up/cook up*: to invent, often with the idea of deceiving (to make perceptible)
 6 *to be uptight*: to be very nervous, excited, worried (reach the limit)
 7 *to be upset*: to be very unhappy, worried, emotionally distressed (idem)
 8 *to mess up/screw up*: to spoil or ruin sth, introduce major disorder (completely)
 9 *to swot up for, bone up (on)*: to study very hard, memorize lots of facts, etc. for an exam
 10 *to hush up*: to cover up, hide, keep sth quiet and secret (completely)
 11 *an upswing*: an upward trend
 12 *to be worked up*: to be very nervous, upset, frustrated, worried and excited
 13 *to live up to*: to reach the (high) level the person expected
 14 *to smash up*: to destroy, damage very seriously (completely)
 15 *to loosen up*: to relax (reach the limit)
 16 *to be (all) mixed up*: to be confused, not knowing what to think, do or say

9 Fill in the verbs and weld them with the nouns into tight expressions/collocations.

1 brush up/polish up – 2 clear up – 3 blow up – 4 look up – 5 cough up – 6 think up/cook up – 7 bring up – 8 start up – 9 pick up

10 Paraphrase and/or explain the use of "verb + up" in the following sentences.

1 add up – 2 count up – 3 save up – 4 shaping up – 5 sober up – 6 stir up – 7 wrap up – 8 wrapped up – 9 tighten up on, end up

11 Divide the following group of words in pairs or (near-)synonyms and a few nouns to each pair.

1 to hush up/cover up an affair, a scandal, a matter – 2 to mess up/foul up a plan, a project, one's holiday plans – 3 to brush up/polish up one's foreign languages, a skill – 4 to speak up/stand up for a cause, for one's beliefs, one's convictions – 5 to clean up/sweep up a room, the mess, an area, a city – 6 to cook up/make up

a story, an excuse, a deal, a scheme – 7 to shut up/button up – 8 to gobble up/down/eat up one's food, one's dessert, a cake – 9 to end up in/wind up in the States – 10 to put up/pin up a picture, a notice, an idol – 11 to call up/ring up a friend, an office – 12 to speed up/step up production – 13 to type up/write up a letter, an essay

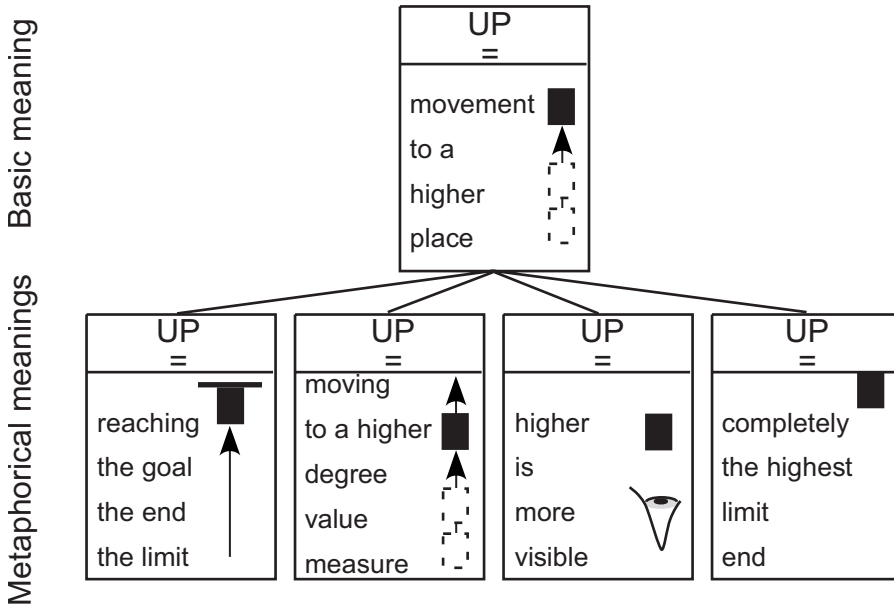
12 Paraphrase/explain and/or justify the use of UP in some of the phrasal verbs.

1 spoil, ruin (completely), i.e. fail or flunk (informal) one's exams – 2 be totally involved, absorbed, enthusiastic about it – 3 be all nervous, worried – 4 give courage, confidence to sb by talking and encouraging him/her – 5 confuse people's names – 6 make a collar hard by using starch – 7 work together with a colleague – 8 accept, listen willingly to his remarks/suggestions – 9 close by fastening the buttons – 10 clean the room thoroughly – 11 invent, make up – 12 invent, to produce, to come up with – 13 shut the road temporarily – 14 cut completely (in slices) – 15 a thorough (complete) medical examination

13 Paraphrase/explain and/or justify the use of UP in some of the phrasal verbs.

1 to type (completely) a manuscript using a computer (word processor) – 2 The sauce thickens as it boils (until it reaches its goal or right thickness). – 3 to visit, go and see this friend – 4 a storm is getting closer to its limit – 5 prices are increasing fast (getting 'higher') – 6 violence has increased, become more intense – 7 to try to smooth up/to settle a broken marriage (bringing it back to its original state or perfection) – 8 to make the cream thicker by beating it with a whip (a kitchen utensil); fig. to create or increase enthusiasm resulting in help, backing – 9 to face, encounter very serious competition – 10 to remind sb of the past, bringing it back to the person's attention – 11 to make a reservation in a hotel, i.e. bringing it into one's power or control

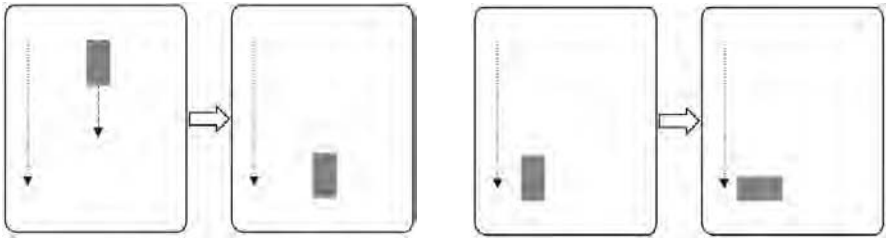
14 Explain the schema underneath to a person who is not familiar with the cluster of related meanings of 'up'. Give examples wherever you can.



5 DOWN is negative verticality

Down is after *up*, *out* and *off* the most frequently used particle/prefix with some 110 illustrations. This is not surprising as vertical or *up – down* motion or orientation, both physical and especially abstract or metaphorical, is very common in our daily experience. This has also to do with the erect posture of the human body with the head at the top.

5.1 DOWN: movement from a higher to a lower place



blew down – chained down – climb down – fell down – get ... down – go down – jumping down – keep ... down – lie down – shot down – sit down

- 1 Could you to the cellar and bring us up a few bottles of beer? g
- 2 The boy broke his leg when the stairs. j
- 3 The ground forces two enemy planes. sh.....
- 4 He fainted and on the ground. f
- 5 I'm exhausted, I'm going to for a short while. l
- 6 Why don't you and wait till he gets back? s
- 7 ... your head ..., you stayed up so late last night. G.....
- 8 A strong, cold wind from the mountains. bl
- 9 Expecting heavy seas, the captain ordered the cargo to be ch.....
- 10 from that tree before you break your neck. Cl.....
- 11 ... your head ... when I shave your neck. K.....

Glosses: 7 go and have a sleep – 9 heavy seas: rough seas, with big waves due to strong winds

Down often indicates that an object has been displaced or that it has moved from a higher to a lower place. Sometimes, however, the place as such does not change; what changes is the position of the given object, from vertical to horizontal. In this case, think of trees that are being *cut down* – the space they occupy remains more or less the same, but once they are cut, their position has changed from vertical to horizontal.

Down can also be used when: (1) only part of the object changes its position (e.g. *sit down, kneel down*) and 2) **when** no motion takes place but the object is placed lower than it usually is, or its position is more horizontal than vertical (11).

In pairs and taking turns explain (1) the words you are less familiar with (heavy seas, etc.), and (2) show how the verbs exemplify the meaning mentioned in the heading.

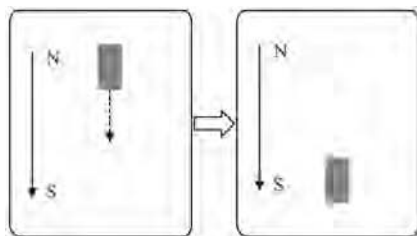
Exetest 1

hauled down – kneeled down – pruned down/US: pruned back – push down – reach down – sagging down – spiraled down – splashed down – strip down – talked ... down – touched down – threw ... down

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1 Large trees are from the mountains and taken to the saw mill. | h..... |
| 2 Filled with grief, she and prayed at the grave of her husband. | kn..... |
| 3 Simply the button to start the machine. | p..... |
| 4 Could you please for me and pick the sheet up? | r..... |
| 5 Look how the roof of the old house is in the middle. | s |
| 6 The first American spacecraft in the Pacific (Ocean). | spl |
| 7 The burning plane and crashed with an explosion. | sp |
| 8 Exhausted he ... himself ... on the couch for a nap. | thr |
| 9 The plane on the runway exactly on time. | t..... |
| 10 Every spring fruit trees have to be | pr..... |
| 11 The doctor asked me to for the medical check-up. | str..... |
| 12 The ground crew ... the inexperienced learner pilot | t..... |

Glosses: **1** pulled, dragged down with effort; saw mill: factory where wood is processed – **2** grief: deep sorrow; grave: place in the cemetery where the body of a dead person is buried – **4** stretch down one's hand – **5** is hanging down under weight or due to old age – **6** landed in the water – **8** nap: short sleep (especially during the day) – **9** landed on the runway – **10** trimmed, reduced by cutting old wood and overgrown shoots – **11** undress – **12** gave him advice on how to land safely

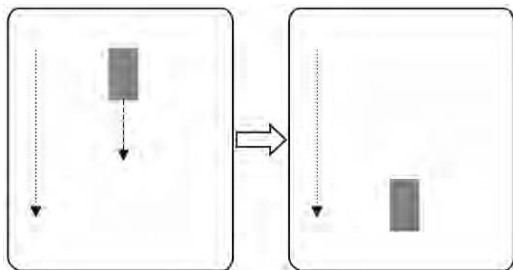
5.2 DOWN: time and geographically orientated motion



Down has many metaphorical uses, two of which concern:

- (a) **time** (viewed as a surface), with often a point in time later than some other point/period.
- 1 He wrote the best history of Poland **up to/down to** 1939. (= covering whatever preceded 1939)
 - 2 She will **go down** in history as the greatest opera singer. (= She will be remembered in the future as...)
 - 3 **Down through** the centuries the Roman Empire went through incredible changes.
- (b) the **geographic orientation** of an object or place. More specifically, **down** is used when the object moves to the *south* or is located south of a given place (cf. **up**, p. 80).
- 1 Let's leave Edinburgh and **go down to** London.
 - 2 It's very hot in Chicago, so you can imagine what it must be like **down in** Miami.

5.3 DOWN: decrease in intensity, quality, quantity, size, degree, value, activity, status, strength ...



Examine the following sentences:

- (a) Why did the principal **put me down** in front of the other students? *scold*
- (b) **Turn down** the TV a bit, please. *lower the volume*
- (c) The teacher didn't like John's paper, so he **turned it down**. *refused it*

In (a), the principal scolded me; by doing so he *lowered* my 'positional' along the respectability scale; cf. **up** = *good, strong, solid, respectable*, etc. vs. **down** = *bad, negative, weak*, etc, p. 80.

In (b), the order expresses a decrease, this time in volume. The speaker wants the sound to be less loud, less intense.

In (c), the teacher's refusal to accept John's paper is seen as an act of degradation, of reducing his piece of work to something *less valuable* and *below* the required standards.

The sentences in the preceding examples showed how most spatial or literal uses of **down** indicate that an object has moved from a higher to a lower location. As can be seen from the above sentences such changes in space can be associated with differences in *volume, temperature, weight, prices, emotions, one's sense of importance or respectability, social relations, power* and many other abstract domains. These metaphorical associations usually express *decrease in intensity and value*.

beaten down – broke down – brought ... down – calm down – cut down – dim ... down, turn ... down – drag ... down – feel down – lets ... down – leveled down to – marked down – melt down – put down – talk down to – talked ... down – shouted ... down – wind down

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 1 Fierce competition ... prices ... fast. | br |
| 2 The university scholarships by 25% to save money. | c |
| 3 During the sales coats were between 20 and 50%. | m |
| 4 The government is trying to all political opposition. | p |
| 5 A true friend never ... you | l |
| 6 She was so shocked by the accident that it took her hours to | c |
| 7 After years of worries and hard work, he and never recovered. | br |
| 8 The peasant uprising was mercilessly ... ../put down. | b |
| 9 I hate people who feel they have to t you. | t |
| 10 The lights are a bit too bright. Could you ... them ... please? | d ...../t..... |
| 11 Don't try to ... me ... to your level of humour. | dr |
| 12 The loud noise a quiet hush. | l |
| 13 Faulty cooling caused the nuclear reactor to | m |
| 14 At the meeting I explained that we had to change, but people ... me | t |
| 15 The furious strikers ... the union leader | sh |
| 16 I don't know why, but I really these days. | f |
| 17 After months of stress I have to | w |

Glosses: **1** fierce: intense, strong – **2** reduced – **3** reduced in price – **4** crush, suppress – **5** never abandons you – **7** collapsed mentally or physically – **8** rebellion, revolt; mercilessly: without pity, cruelly – **9** talk to you as if you were inferior, not clever – **10** decrease their intensity – **11** pull me down – **12** decreased, reduced to virtual silence; hush: silence especially after a lot of noise – **13** to become liquid through overheating – **14** prevented me from continuing to speak by talking or shouting loudly – **15** prevented him from speaking by shouting, yelling – **16** I feel depressed, sad – **17** to take it easy gradually, slowly

In pairs paraphrase the words you or your partner are less familiar with and explain or justify the combination of **down** with some of the verbs.

Exetest 2

going down – got down to – lay down – look down on – play down – put ... down (2x) – slow down – tone down

- 1 The prime minister is trying to his involvement in the scandal. pl.....
- 2 Rich people should not poor people. l.....
- 3 Our economy has been steadily over the last years. g.....
- 4 This sharp bend is very dangerous, so please sl.....
- 5 It is high time you stopped talking and work. g.....
- 6 And now ... your names ... on top of the page. p.....
- 7 It would be wiser to your criticism a bit. t.....
- 8 The teachers got together to the regulations for the school. l.....
- 9 We all strongly disapprove of how he ... you ... in public. p.....

Glosses: **1** make his involvement and role look less important than it was – **2** look at poor people with contempt, as inferior – **3** has been reduced in size, has decreased in quality; *steadily*: gradually and constantly – **4** bend: curve, turn in the road – **5** started working fast, with determination and energy – **6** write – **7** to diminish, to make it sound less extreme – **8** establish – **9** to make you look stupid or silly

Exetest 3

boiled down to/came down to – bring down (2x) – broken down – came down on – cracking down on – dressed ... down – has been down – laughed ... down – narrow down – shout ... down – slim down – water down

- 1 The government is trying hard to inflation. br.....
- 2 The head me for leaving the school early. c.....
- 3 It looks as if the peace talks in the Middle East may have br.....
- 4 Due to the riots and strikes the government had to its reforms. w.....
- 5 At Hyde Park it's quite normal for hecklers to ... a speaker sh.....
- 6 The whole affair / petty jealousy between the men. b...../c.....
- 7 I think you should definitely the topic of your talk. n.....
- 8 The government is again dissidents. cr.....
- 9 The growing inflation rate is bound to the government. br.....

- 10 The crowd disagreed with the speaker and ... him l
- 11 Ever since he failed the exam John/has been in the
dumps. h
- 12 Due to lack of money we had to our original holiday plans. sl.....
- 13 The boss ... his secretary ... for the mistakes she had made. dr

Glosses: 1 to reduce – 2 criticized severely – 3 have collapsed, ended in failure – 5 Speakers Corner in Hyde Park (London): hecklers: people who interrupt public speakers with objections, questions, etc.; scold – 6 could be reduced to, consisted (mainly) of; petty: trivial, unimportant – 7 limit, reduce – 8 hitting, limiting the freedom – 9 is bound to: will necessarily result in overthrowing – 10 silenced the speaker by laughing – 11 has been depressed, unhappy – 12 restrict, reduce – 13 was angry and criticized the secretary in public

Exetest 4

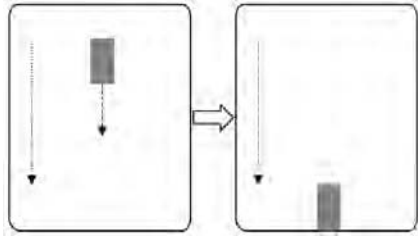
mown down – passed down to – pin down – roaring down – run down – scale down – settle down – shut down – slim down – smooth down – tone down – tumbling down – worn ... down

- 1 I'm having too much fun to retire and s
- 2 A big Mercedes came the hill. r
- 3 I wish there were a way to his obnoxious personality. t
- 4 After weeks of diet and exercise I managed to to a normal
weight. sl.....
- 5 If construction costs continue to rise, we'll have to our
designs. sc
- 6 The pocket watch was me from my great-grandfather. p
- 7 Just before the bank closed, its stocks came t
- 8 You see that years of hard work have ... mother w.....
- 9 It will never be possible to the main cause of his death. p
- 10 If you continually your colleagues, they will hate you. r
- 11 The defending army was by the superior military force. m
- 12 Because of the recession GM will be forced to several
factories. sh.....
- 13 Let me try toout his angry feelings. sm.....

Glosses: 1 settle down: adopt a calm, quiet lifestyle – 2 came closer with a lot of noise – 3 to reduce; obnoxious: very unpleasant, offensive – 4 I managed: I was able; to reduce in weight – 5 reduce, lower – 7 stocks: total value of the bank (money, equipment, build-

ing); *tumbling down*: falling down rapidly – **8** tired, made her weaker, thinner – **9** to establish with precision – **10** criticize in an unpleasant way/US: run ... down – **11** mown/mowed down: killed, especially in large numbers; the way grass is cut by a lawnmower – **12** GM: General Motors, a car manufacturer – **13** to make him feel less angry

5.4 DOWN: reach a goal, completion, extreme limit down the scale



broke down – burned down – closed down – hammer down – hunted down – is down with – knocked ... down – pulled down – put ... down – struck down – tear down

- 1 Sue won't come, she (the) flu/laid up with flu. i.....
- 2 Several houses and shops in the devastating fire. b.....
- 3 All the factories and mines and the place became a ghost town. cl.....
- 4 Our cat is so old and ill, we'll have to ask the vet to ... her p.....
- 5 The escaped prisoner was like a dangerous wild animal. h.....
- 6 The force of the blast ... us kn.....
- 7 Before constructing a new building, the old one must be p.....
- 8 Nurses tried to take care of all those who were in battle. str.....
- 9 They'll all the old buildings to make room for a new development. t.....
- 10 You should that nail sticking out before someone gets hurt. h.....
- 11 I could not finish my article because my computer br.....

Glosses: **3** ghost town: a town where no inhabitants are left – **4** put down: a euphemism for kill (an animal); *vet(erinarian)*: person specialised in the treatment of animal diseases – **5** pursued by the police until captured or killed – **6** explosion – **7** demolished – **8** those hit, wounded lying down – **10** a hammer: a tool to hit nails or break things – **11** stopped working completely

Several verbs + **up** convey the meaning of intensity, completeness of action, i.e. reaching the goal, the highest limit; in the same way many verbs with **down** also stress completion, but this time the lowest limit on the scale of *degree, value, measure*, etc.

5.5 DOWN: movements of eating or writing

copy ... down – gobble down – gulped down – jot down – note ... down – put down – scribble ... down – swallow down – take down – wolfed down – wrote down

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1 He was so hungry that he a whole chicken. | w..... |
| 2 This bitter medicine is hard to | sw |
| 3 Unable to stand the spicy food, he a glass of water. | g |
| 4 Don't your food or you'll end up with stomach ulcers. | g |
| 5 She every single word uttered by the professor. | p |
| 6 Just a second, let me ... these ideas | n |
| 7 Let me first your address. | j |
| 8 Can you ... this message ... and give it to Joe? | c..... |
| 9 He listened very attentively but did not anything. | t |
| 10 The clerk everything the witness said. | wt |
| 11 The speaker spoke so fast that I could hardly ... any of his suggestions | scr..... |

Glosses: **1** *that he ate greedily like a wolf* – **3** *spicy: with strong flavours from pepper, ginger, etc.; drank quickly (and often in big gulps)* – **4** *eat so fast, so greedily* – **6** *write down* – **7** *write down quickly* – **10** *witness: a person who watches an event and is able to describe it later on* – **11** *write down very fast and carelessly*

Taking into account the downward movement which accompanies eating and writing, it is no surprise that many of the verbs expressing these activities contain the particle *down*.

Exetest 5

downfall – downgraded – downpour – downright – downstairs – downstream – down-to-earth – downtown – downtrodden – upside down

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1 Drinks are being served in the bar (which is) | downst..... |
| 2 On Saturdays I do my shopping (US) ..., not in the suburbs. | downt |
| 3 In Monrovia there are a few rich, powerful people and a ... majority. | downtr..... |
| 4 The road was completely flooded after last night's | downp |
| 5 Look at the wall, they have hung the president's picture | upside..... |
| 6 It was ambition that led to his | downf |
| 7 She's an unromantic, matter-of-fact, kind of person. | down- |
| 8 Far from being promoted as he had hoped, the clerk was | downgr..... |
| 9 I'm sorry to say but the performance was a ... scandal. | downr |
| 10 Our canoe drifted ... with the tide. | downstr |

Glosses: **2** *in the centre of a city* – **3** *people who are (figuratively) trodden (< tread), stepped on by the rich, powerful* – **4** *flooded: covered with water; very heavy rain* – **6** *fall from a high(er) position of power, wealth, etc.* – **7** *matter-of-fact: not sentimental*; *down-to-earth: sensible, realistic, practical* – **8** *was reduced to a lower rank or grade* – **9** *downright, outright: total, complete* – **10** *drifted: was carried along by the tide: rise and fall of the sea*

Down also associates with a number of other words (verbs, nouns, adverbs) to form compounds with new meanings in which **down** plays an important role.

5.6 DOWN: key**5.1 Down: movement from a higher to a lower place**

- 1** go down – **2** jumping down – **3** shot down – **4** fell down – **5** lie down – **6** sit down – **7** Get ... down – **8** blew down – **9** chained down – **10** Climb down – **11** Keep ... down

Exetest 1

1 hauled down – 2 kneeled down – 3 push down – 4 reach down – 5 sagging down – 6 splashed down – 7 spiraled down – 8 threw ... down – 9 touched down – 10 pruned down – 11 strip down – 12 talked ... down

5.3 Down: decrease in intensity, quality, quantity, size, degree, value, activity, status, strength...

1 brought ... down – 2 cut down – 3 marked down – 4 put down – 5 lets ... down – 6 calm down – 7 broke down – 8 beaten down – 9 talk down to – 10 dim ... down – 11 drag ... down – 12 leveled down to – 13 melt down – 14 talked ... down – 15 shouted ... down – 16 feel down – 17 wind down

Exetest 2

1 play down – 2 look down on – 3 going down – 4 slow down – 5 got down to – 6 put ... down – 7 tone down – 8 lay down – 9 put ... down

Exetest 3

1 bring down – 2 came down on – 3 broken down – 4 water down – 5 shout ... down – 6 boiled down to/came down to – 7 narrow down – 8 cracking down on – 9 bring down – 10 laughed ... down – 11 has been down – 12 slim down – 13 dressed ... down

Exetest 4

1 settle down – 2 roaring down – 3 tone down – 4 slim down – 5 scale down – 6 passed down to – 7 tumbling down – 8 worn ... down – 9 pin down – 10 run down/US: run ... down – 11 mown down – 12 shut down – 13 smooth ... down

5.4 Down: reach a goal, completion, extreme limit down the scale

1 is down – 2 burned down – 3 closed down – 4 put ... down – 5 hunted down – 6 knocked ... down – 7 pulled down – 8 struck down < strike – 9 tear down – 10 hammer down – 11 broke down (< break)

5.5 Down: movements of eating or writing

1 wolfed down – 2 swallow down/US: swallow – 3 gulped down – 4 gobble down – 5 put down – 6 note ... down – 7 jot down – 8 copy ... down – 9 take down – 10 wrote down – 11 scribble ... down

Exetest 5

1 downstairs – 2 US: downtown/Br.E: in the town centre – 3 downtrodden – 4 downpour – 5 upside down – 6 downfall – 7 down-to-earth – 8 downgraded – 9 downright – 10 downstream

5.7 Expand and test your knowledge of 'down'

1 *What are the main senses of 'down'? Give examples.*

2 *Fill in the phrasal verb and paraphrase/explain their meanings.*

- 1 The government's tough austerity programme did not well. g.....
- 2 My suggestion was by half of the committee plus one vote. v.....
- 3 How is Sue doing? I heard that she was by a car not long ago. r.....
- 4 The factory had to its production by 10 per cent. c.....
- 5 Let's stop talking and business. g.....
- 6 After the check-up the doctor advised me to my pace of life. sl.....
- 7 What happened to Janet: she looks so w.....
- 8 The government is finally the Mafia. cl.....
- 9 Since the Stock Market crash shares have continued to sp.....
- 10 The trade unions had to their pay demands. sc.....
- 11 Unable to solve the crisis, the government had to st.....
- 12 I have a hard time starting the motor, the battery seems to have r.....
- 13 Thanks to a witness the police was able to the criminal. tr.....

3 Paraphrase the meaning of the following or show through collocations that you understand them.

- 1 to wolf down
- 2 to scribble down
- 3 to tear down
- 4 to settle down
- 5 to talk sb down
- 6 to calm sb down
- 7 to melt down
- 8 to vote down
- 9 to play down
- 10 to slim down
- 11 to level down
- 12 to hammer down
- 13 to put down
- 14 to strip down
- 15 to spiral down

4 Fill in the verbs that go with the following collocations and explain/justify the use of 'down' in some collocations.

- 1 to a bush; an industry, a company; an experiment pr
- 2 to a slope; a list with names, sb on a zebra crossing,
a colleague r
- 3 to prices, the government, the level of inflation br
- 4 to a dog, a tent; the enemy, a person t
- 5 to a factory, a school, a TV station, a mine, a supermarket cl.....
- 6 to a proposal, a measure, a motion in parliament v
- 7 to an aircraft; an idea, a speaker, a hypothesis, a theory,
a proposal sh.....
- 8 A car, communication, a marriage, one's resistance can br... .. br
- 9 A piece of rock, a company, a house can cr... .. cr

In pairs work from the nouns to the verbs; then work from the verbs to the nouns trying to come up with as many collocations as possible.

5 Give a near-synonym of the following.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 to jot down | 5 to land (plane) |
| 2 to wolf down | 6 to press (a button) |
| 3 to slim down | 7 to criticize sb |
| 4 to chain down/up | 8 to start (with energy) |

6 Illustrate the literal and/or metaphorical meanings of the following verbs.

1 to prune down/prune back – 2 to put down – 3 to look down (on) – 4 to lay down – 5 to run down – 6 to climb down (over) an issue – 7 to cut down (on) – 8 to go down

7 Give the phrasal verbs with 'down' that correspond to the following paraphrases and if need be, go over them.

- 1 *be in bed with* (the) flu
- 2 *stop functioning* (of a machine)
- 3 *abandon, to fail to help* sb
- 4 *decrease the intensity* of sb's complaining
- 5 *speak to sb as if he were stupid*
- 6 *consider oneself superior and despise* others
- 7 *reduce sth in number, size, etc.*
- 8 *make one's criticism less harsh, less nasty*
- 9 *do things less quickly*
- 10 *reduce sth in price*
- 11 *go and have a sleep; work very intensively on* sth to do with studies
- 12 *eat quickly and greedily*
- 13 *collapse physically and/or mentally*
- 14 *search and find after lots of difficulties*
- 15 *reduce, pass away gradually* (of pain)

8 You may not have come across the following expressions yet and still you will be able to explain them.

- 1 *Down through* the centuries.
- 2 My bank account was *100 dollars down*.

- 3 *It is down to him/It is up to him to take a decision.*
- 4 *I can't buy you a meal, I'm down to my last euro.*
- 5 *There is a supermarket down the street.*
- 6 *He had downed too many beers to be able to drive his car safely.*
- 7 *Be careful with this drug, it's a downer.*
- 8 *Don't be so downhearted, things will improve.*
- 9 *The stockmarket crash led to a downturn in consumer spending.*

5.8 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'down''

2 *Fill in the phrasal verb and paraphrase/explain their meanings.*

1 go down (imposed by the people on top, it was not accepted well by the people 'down') – 2 voted down (the suggestion was brought up but it went 'down' since it was not accepted) – 3 run down (from an erect position the person was lying flat) – 4 cut down (decrease its production) – 5 get down to work – 6 slow down – 7 worn down (< wear), tired, exhausted – 8 clamping down on – 9 spiral down – 10 scale down/lower – 11 step down – 12 run down/be low – 13 track down

3 *Paraphrase the meaning of the following or show through collocations that you understand them.*

1 to eat quickly and greedily (the way wolves or dogs do); food *goes down* from the mouth to the stomach – 2 to take down/write down sth quickly, hastily (writing is an activity from higher up (thinking, hearing) to lower, down on paper) – 3 to take, pull down a building, a picture, a statue (from vertical to (more) horizontal, flat, a heap of rubble) – 4 (after a lot of exciting, nervous wandering) start living a quiet, calm life in a fixed place; fig. settle down to: start an activity giving full attention to it – 5 to talk loudly and so much that the other(s) have to stop talking – 6 to make one less excited or frustrated (from a 'high'/intense state or activity to a low(er) one) – 7 to heat an object until it becomes liquid (usually of metals) – 8 to defeat (majority against minority) a proposal, a motion – 9 to try to make sth (an incident) look less important than it is – 10 to reduce sth in numbers or size (the workforce in a factory); cf. slim: not fat, thin; to slim: to lose weight; also fig.: there is still a slim (small) hope – 11 to lower to the right level (the wages, incomes of the rich to those of the poor) – 12 to fasten by hitting nails with a hammer – 13 an object (on the floor);

to write down an idea, a suggestion; to kill an animal; a plane (to land on the runway), a person (make him look stupid, silly); a sum of money (paying part of the cost of an object when buying it); to suppress a rebellion – **14** to take off, to remove all clothing; all parts of a machine – **15** to move downwards with a continuous winding curve (inflation, a plane)

4 *Fill in the verbs that go with the following collocations and explain/justify the use of 'down'.*

1 prune down/back – **2** run down – **3** bring down – **4** tie down – **5** close down – **6** vote down – **7** to shoot down – **8** (can) break down – **9** crash down

5 *Give a near-synonym of the following.*

1 to scribble down/put down – **2** to gobble down – **3** to reduce sth in numbers or size (the workforce in a factory); cf. to slim: to get thinner – **4** to tie down/up – **5** to touch down – **6** to push down – **7** to come down on sb – **8** to get down to (business, work)

6 *Illustrate the literal and/or metaphorical meanings of the following verbs.*

- 1** lit. to prune down/back a tree or a bush (by cutting some of its branches)
fig. to diminish production costs, expenditure; an essay, a letter (by cutting unnecessary parts)
- 2** lit. a box, a suitcase, a knife (to put these objects on the floor/on the table)
fig. a remark (written); 10% of the sum; an insurrection (defeat); a person (hurt, humiliate him/her)
- 3** lit. a valley, from a ladder, from the roof
fig. to look down *on*: to think of sb as inferior
- 4** lit. one's fork, knife
fig. the rules, the conditions, the regulations, the law
- 5** lit. the stairs, the road; tears running down sb's face
fig. a person (criticize); a person (to hit and injure)
- 6** lit. a ladder, a mountain, a steep hill, the roof
fig. (in a discussion or argument): to give in, to admit that the other person is right
- 7** lit. a tree, a wood
fig. on a text (shorten it); on production costs or time; on smoking (reduce)
- 8** lit. a hill, a slope, a ladder, the stairs; two floors; on one's knees, to London
fig. prices, inflation, the quality of a product, of life in the neighbourhood

7 Give the phrasal verbs with 'down' that correspond to the following paraphrases and if need be, go over them several times.

1 be down with the flu – 2 break down – 3 let sb down – 4 tune down – 5 talk sb down – 6 to look down on – 7 scale down – 8 tone down – 9 slow down – 10 mark down – 11 get one's head down – 12 wolf/gobble down – 13 break down 14 track down – 15 wear down

8 The following expressions with 'down' are taken from a monolingual English dictionary. Though you may not have come across them you'll be able to explain them.

1 throughout the centuries (the centuries are seen as a continuum or a long line/surface, all the way *down to* the moment the person spoke or wrote about

2 negative, below zero

3 down (or up) to: it is the responsibility of the person mentioned (to do sth)

4 I have only a few euros/dollars left.

5 further away from the speaker

6 He had drunk too many beers.

7 a drug that depresses the user

8 do not be so depressed, in low spirits

9 a decrease of spending by the consumers

6 OFF is breaking contact

Off is after **up** and **out** the third most frequently used particle. It is illustrated here by some 120 instances. Among the meanings expressed by **off** the most important one is ‘loss of contact’ with a surface in the following ways:

- an object is separated from its place;
- two objects which touch each other become separated; or,
- a part of an object is removed or moves away from the whole.

Removal or separation also means motion and distance, as in the case of **away**. There is, however, a difference between the meanings of these two words. The following examples will make this clear.

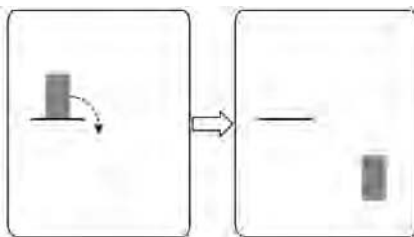
- He *took off* his hat when entering the room.
- The plane *took off* at 10.30 pm.
- It’s a pity you *threw away* your cap.

In (a), **off** does not express that the hat is out of the man’s reach or that it has disappeared. **Off** here simply means that the hat is no longer on the man’s head, but the man may well be holding it in his hand. Similarly,

in (b), **off** means only that the plane just left the ground, that it no longer touches the ground; *take off* is the opposite of *touch down*;

in (c), however, the notion of physical contact is not important. What matters is the fact that the cap is no longer within one’s reach, and thus cannot be retrieved. While **off** emphasizes removal or separation, **away** stresses *distance* and *lack of ready access*.

6.1 OFF: loss of spatial contact or spatial separation



blast off/lift off – break off – came off – cut off/chopped off – dropped off/came off – fell off – get off – off with – peeling off – sawed off – shake ... off – step off – torn off

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 He a ladder and broke both of his legs. | f |
| 2 There is snow on your cap. ... it ... before you come in! | Sh |
| 3 The main difficulty with flying is first to the ground. | g |
| 4 Several buttons on my pullover /... .. in the wash. | dr /c |
| 5 The handle of my bag suddenly | c |
| 6 The king's head was /... .. in 1649. | c /ch |
| 7 The hostile crowd shouted: '... .. his head!' | o |
| 8 the dead branches of the rose bush. | Br |
| 9 The tree would look better if you the lower branches. | s |
| 10 Be careful when you the train. | st |
| 11 The spacecraft will /... .. again next week in Florida. | bl /l |
| 12 The old wallpaper as well as the paint started | p |
| 13 Who could have this nice poster? | t |

Glosses: **9** cut (saw) off with a saw – **11** will be launched, will take off – **12** starts coming off, getting detached in strips and pieces

Due to the law of gravity loss of physical contact or separation generally results in a downward motion.

In pairs and taking turns explain the less familiar words/verbs and show how **off** expresses 'loss of spatial contact, spatial separation'.

Exetext 1

drop ... off – get off – scare off/frighten off – slice off – strike ... off – touched off – wander off – wrench ... off – yanked off

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1 Could you about 10 cm of this piece of wood please? | sl |
| 2 The authorities will you ... the hoteliers' list if you don't clean up this kitchen. | str |
| 3 A small skirmish with the police nearly a riot. | t |
| 4 Don't from the group or you will never find your way back. | w |

- 5 A mugger coming from behind my sister's purse and ran away. y.....
- 6 Don't tighten the bolt too much or you might ... it wr.....
- 7 You'd better the train at Victoria Station. g.....
- 8 Could you ... me ... at the (railway) station? dr.....
- 9 Our Alsatian dog will /... .. any potential intruder. sc...../fr.....

Glosses: **1** cut a slice (a thin piece) off – **3** skirmish: a fight between a small group and the police; **nearly:** almost; **riots:** wild and violent protests (with plundering and destruction) by big crowds – **4** wander off: move away from the group – **5** mugger: a person who attacks and robs people in the street – **6** tighten: screw; wrench off: twist or pull the bolt so that it comes off – **8** drop ... off: let me leave the car

6.2 OFF: separation as loss of contact



be off – beat off – carried off – clean ... off – closed off – cordoned off – cut off – is off to – keep off – see ... off – sent ... off – set off

- 1 Eek! It's 11 o'clock! I must now. So, see you later. b.....
- 2 John town now; I don't know what time he will be back. i.....
- 3 It's high time we, we still have a long way to go. s
- 4 Why haven't you ... these letters ... yet? s
- 5 The whole family went to the airport to ... her s
- 6 the grass! the sign said. K.....
- 7 The mountain village has been since the heavy snowfall. c
- 8 They the street because it is going to be re-surfaced. cl.....
- 9 The police the protesters with their truncheons. b.....
- 10 The removals company came and all our furniture. c
- 11 Look how filthy the table is; let's ... it ... first. cl.....
- 12 The scene of the crime was to keep spectators away. c.....

Glosses: **1** I must leave – **2** John has left for – **3** to begin the journey – **5** to say goodbye to her – **9** beat off: drove back or away by fighting and beating the protesters; truncheons: short sticks used by the police as a weapon – **10** removals company: a company which helps moving furniture from one house to another – **11** filthy: very dirty and (even) disgusting – **12** blocked preventing people from getting close to the scene

Concrete objects occupy a certain space, and, as was illustrated in the **out** section, this space can function as a container. In addition to space, objects often occupy a surface. When you stand, sit or lie, you too occupy some surface, be it the ground, a chair or a bed. Obviously, you can leave the surface, and in this situation **off** can be used. Note that the surface does not have to be mentioned.

Off can also be used when an object has no contact with another object or when an area loses contact with its neighbouring area. A bold line will symbolize whatever causes this loss of contact.

Exetext 2

come off/out – dashed off – drove off – dust off – fence off – lick ... off – lifted off – polish off – ran off – rushed off – scrape ... off – sealed off – skim off – sweep ... off

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1 It's a sign of bad manners to ... food ... your knife at table. | l |
| 2 the old paint before putting on the new emulsion. | Scr |
| 3 I'm afraid these stains won't | c |
| 4 The bus before the old lady reached the bus stop. | dr |
| 5 Do you know that Jack with the girl next door? | r |
| 6 The injured cyclist was to hospital. | r |
| 7 She the cover of the pot to see what was inside. | l |
| 8 First the cream from the milk. | sk |
| 9 She to the station to catch the last train home. | d |
| 10 In autumn, I have to ... the leaves ... our driveway regularly. | sw |
| 11 We had to the vegetable garden to keep the rabbits away. | f |
| 12 the last piece of cake so that I can wash the plate. | P |
| 13 The prison was before other prisoners could escape. | s |
| 14 Please the furniture before the visitors come. | d |

Glosses: **1** to clean by passing the tongue over – **2** to remove with a hard brush – **3** stains: spots, marks – **5** ran away, left with – **6** was quickly brought to hospital – **8** remove the cream from the surface of the milk – **9** she ran, hurried off to – **10** to remove

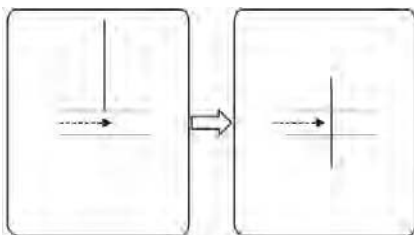
with a brush; driveway: a private road from the street to one's house – **12** (humorous) finish quickly eating the last piece – **13** the police surrounded the prison preventing other prisoners from escaping – **14** remove the dust

In pairs paraphrase the words you are less familiar with and show why **off** is used.

Ex. 6 **rushed off**: the injured person was removed, carried off/away at high speed from the place of the accident to the hospital

12 **polish off**: lick one's knife or plate so as to remove the food that is sticking to or lying on it

6.3 OFF: separation as interruption of flow/supply



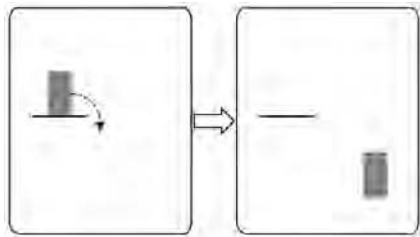
blocked off – broke off – cut off (2x) – cut ... off (2x) – snapped off – switch off – turn off

- 1 The company intends to our electricity supply tomorrow. c
- 2 The gas has again been for two hours. c
- 3 Please the radio/the TV/the lights/the water. t.....
- 4 Don't forget to the lamp/the radio/the oven/the iron. sw.....
- 5 Due to a serious accident the motorway was for the rest of the day. bl.....
- 6 A cable on the scaffolding and 3 workers plunged to their death. sn
- 7 The moderator ... the sneering speaker c
- 8 England relations with Rondovia after the killing of British tourists. br.....
- 9 If you behave in this way, you will ... yourself ... from your friends. c

Glosses: 6 scaffolding: a structure made up of poles and boards and used by painters, builders to work on a building; snapped: broke (suddenly, often with a noise); plunged to their death: fell down from a considerable height and died

With certain verbs, **off** can also express *interruption of the flow/supply of e.g. water, gas or electricity* (by turning a tap, a switch or other devices). In this case, the amount of water, gas, etc. that potentially can be provided is viewed as separated from the amount that has already been supplied. Furthermore, other parts of reality such as *relations, traffic, cables, speech* can also be viewed as consisting of a flow and as a result **off** can be used to indicate an interruption of it.

6.4 OFF: separation due to motion away from its former state, condition or point of reference



better off/worse off – bit off – called off/put off – cool off – eased off – finished ... off – keep off – lay off – let off – started ... off – trigger/spark off – turns ... off/puts ... off – written ... off

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1 The factory will about one third of its workers. | l |
| 2 Unfortunately the doctors have ... the patient | wr |
| 3 Tonight's meeting has been /... .. . | c...../p..... |
| 4 It took her hours to after the heated quarrel with her husband. | c..... |
| 5 In what respects are people or now than fifty years ago? | b /w..... |
| 6 His terrible moodiness ... me ... /... me | t /p..... |
| 7 The job was too much for me; I more than I can chew. | b |
| 8 I must admit that the boss's nasty and unfair remarks ... me | f |

- 9 After work I take my bike and do some cycling to steam. l.....
- 10 The governor ... the election campaign ... with a fund-raising party. st
- 11 The tension when the president promised an investigation. ea
- 12 Many people try to fats, sugar and other unhealthy products. k.....
- 13 The latest tax increases are bound to /... .. strikes and riots. tr/sp.....

Glosses: **1** will dismiss workers – **2** to consider the patient as incurable – **3** has been postponed to a later date – **4** to calm down; heated: angry – **5** better or worse off: richer or poorer – **6** moodiness: quick changes in attitude; displeases, disgusts me – **7** undertook, accepted; chew: here, handle, face – **8** destroyed me – **9** to calm down, relax – **10** began; a party intended to raise financial support for a politician’s campaign – **11** decreased, went down – **12** stay away from, quit, not to eat – **13** are bound to: will certainly, surely; cause, lead to

Exetest 3

chop off – made off with – mark off – rattle off – reeling off – round ... off – run off – splintered off from – tipped off – wear off – written ... off – yanked off

- 1 During the war many Jews and young men were the streets. y.....
- 2 The thieves attacked the train and tens of millions of dollars. m.....
- 3 The mafia boss had been that the police would come to arrest him. t.....
- 4 Thanks to the cold compresses the pain started to after a few hours. w.....
- 5 Since he started drinking I have ... him wr.....
- 6 I would the paragraph on top of page two. ch.....
- 7 Please ... the total ... to five thousand. r.....
- 8 Could you two feet on that pipe so that I know where to cut it. m.....
- 9 One Republic after another the crumbling empire. spl.....
- 10 This professor’s teaching consists of nothing else than facts. r.....
- 11 How many copies of the text should we for you? r.....

12 Our teacher's main interest was how fast you could dates
and battles. r

Glosses: **1** were arrested and taken violently off the streets – **2** stole and escaped with – **3** had been informed, warned – **4** pass away gradually – **5** go(ne) off sb: lose/lost interest in sb – **6** delete, do away with – **7** add or subtract a bit of money so as to reach the sum of five thousand – **8** measure and mark – **9** separated from the empire; crumbling: coming to an end due to the breaking into small pieces – **10** reeling off: enumerating facts, information in a very fast way without having to think – **11** run off copies: reproduce on a (photocopying) machine – **12** say at great speed

As the examples above show, loss of physical contact i.e. spatial separation can be extended to any situation in which an object or entity is separated or freed from a given state or condition, or in which one element – no matter how abstract – becomes dissociated from some other element.

Choose a few sentences and show how **off** plays an important role in the meaning of the verb:

- Ex. 2 **write off a patient:** the doctors remove him from the (list of) people who might still recover, get cured
3 **call off/put off a meeting:** cancel the meeting by removing it from the moment it was originally scheduled

Exetest 4

branch off – buy off – cross ... off – dozed off – gives off – levelled off – lived off – married off – pay off – ripped off – wash off – wearing off

- 1 The players' initial enthusiasm seems to be w.....
- 2 It will take us twenty years to the loan on our house. p
- 3 Blood stains do not usually easily. w.....
- 4 I'm tired of my job and would like to into another field of work. br
- 5 When he was caught red-handed, he tried to the policeman. b
- 6 After an insult like that, I ... her ... my Christmas-card list. cr
- 7 The lecture was dull and quite a few students d
- 8 New carpeting always a strange smell. g
- 9 The demand for petrol after the energy crisis of 1973. l
- 10 It's a shame he has his girlfriend for so long. l

- 11 At long last the poor old farmer his seventh daughter. m.....
- 12 Always check the bill to be sure you aren't r.....

Glosses: **1** to diminish, disappear gradually – **2** to pay completely – **4** to try out sth else – **5** caught in the act of stealing; bribe or pay the policeman so that he drops the charge – **6** she is no longer on my list – **7** dull: boring, monotonous; fell asleep – **9** stopped increasing – **10** he was able to live as he was given money by his girlfriend – **12** (not) ripped off: (not) cheated

Exetest 5

am off – is her day off – off-season – ring off – show off – took ... off – ward off

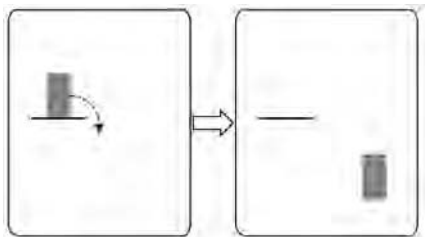
- 1 Louise isn't here today, Wednesday i... .. i.....
- 2 What a relief! I all the antibiotics now. a
- 3 The travel agency is offering cheaper ...-... rates. o.....
- 4 He ... a month ... in order to finish his project. t.....
- 5 Vitamin C may allow you to infection/many diseases. w
- 6 Young girls sometimes like to a bit at parties. sh
- 7 Somebody is knocking at the door; sorry, I must Bye
bye. r.....

Glosses: **1** she's not at work – **2** relief: feeling of well-being; I do not take the antibiotics any more; relief: good feeling, removing from pain or distress – **3** outside the main tourist season – **4** stopped working – **5** prevent you from getting – **6** try to impress others by behaving in an abnormal way – **7** I must hang (the phone) up

Finally, **off** can be used metaphorically to say that a given state/situation is different from the one which serves as a point of reference or comparison. This point (work, habit of taking medication, financial situation, etc.) may be taken as the norm.

In pairs select a few sentences and show how **off** exemplifies the meaning above.

- Ex. **2 be off the antibiotics:** the person was in a state in which (s)he took antibiotics, now (s)he has moved away from this state which serves as a point of reference or norm
- 6 show off:** young girls behave normally the way everybody behaves; however, at parties young girls may get away from this state of behaviour, norm or point of reference by behaving in a different way



Exetest 6

off (3 x) – off-beat – off-colour – off-day – offhand – off-key – off-peak/off-season – off-prints – off-putting – off-shore – off-side – offspring – stand-off – standoffish – trade-off

- 1 There is fear that the ...-... oil rigs will pollute the coast.
- 2 The ship sank in a storm ... Cape Horn/... the British coast.
- 3 We live in Cedar Drive, a street ... Main Avenue.
- 4 She is very unconventional and wears ...-... dresses.
- 5 Our team had an ... and lost 3–0 (three–nil).
- 6 I cannot tell you ... how many people turned up at the meeting.
- 7 Don't you think that our Mary looks ...-... these days?
- 8 Some of his remarks were ... and not well received by the boss.
- 9 ...-p.../...-s... tickets are generally much cheaper
- 10 Each author got twenty ... of his article.
- 11 His rude behaviour was rather ..., to say the least.
- 12 Although both parents are very clever, none of their ... is.
- 13 The goal was not validated because one player was ...-...
- 14 As neither was prepared to compromise, the negotiations ended in a ...-.../deadlock.
- 15 He is not a popular person, he's rather cold and
- 16 Though we did not gain many concessions in the negotiations, it was still a fair

Glosses: **1** oil rigs: structures which allow the extraction of oil from under the ground or sea – **2** of point x: not far away, but at some distance – **4** unconventional: not following or behaving the way most people do; off-beat: unusual – **5** a bad day – **6** off-hand: spontaneously, without thinking; turned up: came to – **7** does not feel/look very well – **8** not appropriate, not fitting – **9** tickets for times that are less popular or less busy – **11** unpleasant, disturbing – **12** none of their children – **13** (in football) on the wrong side –

14 in a complete failure – **15** distant, not friendly – **16** fair: reasonable, good; trade-off: compromise; fair: reasonable, just

As the above compounds show, **off** combines with nouns, verbs and adjectives to form new nouns, adjectives or adverbs of manner.

Exetest 7

brushed off – laugh off – lived ... off – sell ... off – signed off – slacken off – tell ... off – tick off – went off – yelled ... off

- 1 Fortunately, there was nobody in the hall when the bomb w
- 2 We had to our furniture before moving to Asia. s
- 3 The boss will surely ... you ... for your sloppiness. t.....
- 4 Official letters are with “Sincerely yours” or “Yours sincerely”. s
- 5 Don’t your slimming diet: you have lost only five pounds so far. sl
- 6 Could you the names of all the students who were absent? t.....
- 7 You may the opposition, but they have made some valid points. l.....
- 8 When his mother refused to buy him the bag of sweets, the two year old just ... his head y.....
- 9 For years the convicted spy had ... extravagantly ... the public trust. l.....
- 10 With a rude brusqueness, the offended lecturer the evidence given by the audience. br.....

Glosses: **1** exploded – **2** to sell at reduced prices – **3** scold, blame; sloppiness: carelessness – **4** finish (off) – **5** slacken off: reduce, diminish ; so far: until now, up to now – **6** mark off)put a mark next to the students’ names who are absent – **7** scoff at, find ridiculous – **8** shouted very loudly – **9** exploited; trust: confidence – **10** brusqueness: in a rude, abrupt way, using few words; brushed off: ignored, did not take into account; evidence: information, indications

6.5 OFF: key

6.1 Off: loss of spatial contact, spatial separation

1 fell off – 2 Shake ... off – 3 get off – 4 dropped off/came off – 5 came off – 6 cut off/chopped off – 7 Off with – 8 Break off – 9 sawed off – 10 step off – 11 blast off/lift off – 12 peeling off – 13 torn off < tear

Exetest 1

1 slice ... off – 2 strike ... off – 3 touched off – 4 wander off – 5 yanked off – 6 wrench ... off – 7 get off – 8 drop ... off – 9 scare off/frighten off

6.2 Off: separation as loss of contact

1 be off – 2 is off to – 3 set off – 4 sent ... off – 5 see ... off – 6 Keep off – 7 cut off – 8 closed off – 9 beat off – 10 carried off – 11 clean ... off – 12 cordoned off

Exetest 2

1 lick ... off – 2 Scrape off – 3 come off/out – 4 drove off – 5 ran off – 6 rushed off – 7 lifted off 8 skim off – 9 dashed off – 10 sweep ... off – 11 fence off – 12 Polish off – 13 sealed off – 14 dust off

6.3 Off: separation as interruption of flow/supply

1 cut off – 2 cut off – 3 turn off – 4 switch off – 5 blocked off – 6 snapped off – 7 cut ... off – 8 broke off – 9 cut ... off

6.4 Off: separation due to motion away from its former state or condition

1 lay off – 2 written ... off – 3 called off/put off – 4 cool off – 5 better off, worse off – 6 turns ... off/puts ... off – 7 bit off < bite – 8 finished ... off – 9 let off – 10 started ... off – 11 eased off – 12 keep off – 13 trigger off/spark off

Exetest 3

1 yanked off – 2 made off with – 3 tipped off – 4 wear off – 5 written ... off – 6 chop off – 7 round ... off – 8 mark off – 9 splintered off from – 10 reeling off – 11 run off – 12 rattle off

Exetest 4

1 wearing off – 2 pay off – 3 wash off – 4 branch off – 5 buy off – 6 cross ... off – 7 dozed off – 8 gives off – 9 levelled off – 10 lived off – 11 married off – 12 ripped off

Exetest 5

1 is her day off – 2 am off – 3 off-season – 4 took ... off – 5 ward off – 6 show off – 7 ring off

Exetest 6

1 off-shore – 2 off, off – 3 off – 4 off-beat – 5 off-day – 6 offhand – 7 off-colour – 8 off-key – 9 off-peak/off-season – 10 offprints – 11 off-putting – 12 off-spring – 13 off-side – 14 stand-off – 15 standoffish – 16 trade-off

Exetest 7

1 went off – 2 sell ... off – 3 tell ... off – 4 signed off – 5 slacken off – 6 tick off – 7 laugh off – 8 yelled ... off – 9 lived ... off – 10 brushed off

6.6 Expand and test your knowledge of 'off'

1 *Specify the different senses of 'off' and illustrate them with examples.*

2 *Provide the phrasal verbs that correspond to the paraphrases and study them.*

- 1 to cut off (one's head), often with an axe; to shorten sth (cut off)
- 2 to rise vertically (a rocket, a missile)
- 3 to end (relations); to come apart; stop speaking to each other
- 4 to remove roughly sth that is glued to a surface (a poster, a wrapping)
- 5 to remove by pulling off in thin pieces, strips (paint, skin)

- 6 to cause to happen or to start (to set off, spark off)
- 7 to consider sb/sth as a failure, as a loss (a patient, damage)
- 8 to go, leave a place; to be disconnected; to be bad (of food)
- 9 to diminish gradually (of smells, feelings, pain, enthusiasm)
- 10 to stop sth from happening, to cancel (a meeting)
- 11 a ticket outside the main tourist season (which is less expensive)
- 12 to be angry, very annoyed, displeased by somebody's children
- 13 to have a day when one does not do things well, when one is not
lucky
- 14 to be distant, cold in one's relationships
- 15 to answer immediately, spontaneously without having to think
about it
- 16 to live at the cost of sb else

Alternatively cover up one part and try to come up with the other one.

3 Replace the following with a 'verb + off' as a (near-)synonym.

- 1 not to have to work on Thursday, on a certain day, tomorrow
- 2 to explode, to be fired (of a weapon, gun)
- 3 to scold a person, to speak angrily to a person for what the person
did
- 4 to avoid people, to lose contact with others
- 5 to utter a text, a series of words fast, without stopping,
automatically
- 6 to be rather poor, less rich than somebody else
- 7 to dismiss workers
- 8 to remove the top layer (of fat, cream) from the soup, from milk
- 9 to put a mark next to an item on a list
- 10 to close a street for the traffic
- 11 to print/make a hundred copies of a document
- 12 to try to bribe somebody
- 13 to give information (to the police) as a warning that sth may
happen

After completing the phrasal verbs work from left to right and from right to left.

4 What are the differences/similarities between the following pairs?

1 to jump/jump off – 2 to pay/pay off – 3 to show/show off – 4 to sweat/sweat off – 5 to finish/finish off – 6 to cut/cut off – 7 to touch/touch off – 8 to lift/lift off – 9 to sign/sign off – 10 to sell/sell off

5 We understand and speak in collocations; fill in the phrasal verbs and study the collocations both ways.

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 to ... off a prize, jewellery, hostages, an award | c..... |
| 2 to ... off with a painting, a brand new car, the loot (stolen goods) | m..... |
| 3 to ... off a meeting, a match, a journey, a picnic, a search for sb | c..... |
| 4 to ... off the electricity, the information stream, relations with | c..... |
| 5 to ... off a button, a top from a bottle, a cap, a handle (of the door) | tw..... |
| 6 to ... off a debt, a loan, a mortgage, workers (when a factory closes) | p..... |
| 7 to ... off a cold, one's anger/bad temper, (sweat off) a few pounds | w..... |
| 8 to ... off the police, the authorities, the burglars, the gangsters | t..... |
| 9 to ... off one's responsibility, the guilt onto sb else | sh..... |
| 10 to ... off a cold, a bug, a virus, an attack, the flu | f..... |
| 11 to ... off protests, objections, complaints, suggestions | shr..... |
| 12 Novelties, sensations and even pain ... off rapidly. | w..... |
| 13 This food, this fish, this meat starts smelling, for sure it has ... off. | g..... |
| 14 Your efforts, careful planning, enthusiasm are ... off. | p..... |
| 15 The pressure, the work load, the intensity, the headache ... off. | ea..... |
| 16 The marriage, the race, the hunt, the game ... off. | c..... |

6 Fill in the phrasal verbs and explain their meanings in your own words.

- 1 The play was so bad that the actors were ... right ... the stage. b
- 2 ... everyone ... on the list to be sure no-one is absent. T
- 3 At 5 pm. the workers rushed out to (Brit.)/... .. out (US). cl.....
- 4 The tension when the president promised an inquiry. ea.....
- 5 The warship one canon to announce its arrival in port. f.....
- 6 When you water the lawn, don't let too much water the grass. r.....
- 7 The hospital beds were from each other with a curtain. scr.....
- 8 I should rest a few days before I on my next trip. s.....
- 9 Once again UN soldiers were to the Persian Gulf. sh.....
- 10 For centuries Japan was from the rest of the world. sh.....
- 11 It is good tactics to begin/... .. a speech with a good joke. st.....
- 12 My cold wouldn't go away, so I went jogging to ... it sw
- 13 Everyone to one side as the king walked by. st.....
- 14 I didn't want the whole bunch of grapes, so I just ... a few tw
- 15 His comments ... way ... the real issue. w.....
- 16 I started jogging regularly in the hope of a few pounds. w.....

7 Replace (part of) the content of the following sentences by a 'phrasal verb + off'.

- 1 I must *leave now*.
- 2 They went to the station/airport to *see her leave*.
- 3 Please, *do not walk/lie on the grass!*
- 4 Ten workers were *made redundant/dismissed*.
- 5 The price increases *led to* riots in several cities.
- 6 Could you *photocopy* this page a hundred times?
- 7 My brother has cancer, doctors *regard him as incurable*.
- 8 I think we'd better *cancel* the meeting.
- 9 One of the participants *interrupted* the speaker.
- 10 The police were *warned, informed* about the crime beforehand.

- 11 I'm having some friends over, I have to *hang up* now.
- 12 I'm afraid the food is *no good any more*.

6.7 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'off''

2 Explain the meaning of the following in your own words.

1 to chop off – 2 to lift off – 3 to break off – 4 to tear off – 5 to peel off – 6 to trigger off – 7 to write off – 8 to be off – 9 to wear off – 10 to call off – 11 an off-season ticket – 12 to be put off by sb's offsprings – 13 to have an off-day – 14 to be standoffish – 15 to answer offhand – 16 to live off sb

3 Replace the following with a verb + off as a (near-)synonym.

1 to have (Thursday) off – 2 to go off – 3 to tell a person off – 4 to cut oneself off – 5 to rattle off/reel off – 6 to be worse off than – 7 to lay off – 8 to skim off – 9 to tick off – 10 to cordon off – 11 to run off (copies) – 12 to buy off (bribe) – 13 to tip off

4 What are the differences/similarities between the following pairs?

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1 <i>jump off</i> : | jump down from a higher point (from a wall, fence, lorry) |
| 2 <i>pay off</i> : | pay (a debt) completely |
| 3 <i>show off</i> : | to try to attract attention and admiration out of vanity, pride |
| 4 <i>to sweat off</i> : | to lose, get rid of weight through strenuous effort |
| 5 <i>to finish off</i> : | to finish completely |
| 6 <i>to cut off</i> : | to remove completely (sb's head, part of sth: a leg, a piece of string) |
| 7 <i>to touch off</i> : | to start sth violent, to begin (riots, a fight, a war, an uproar) |
| 8 <i>to lift</i> : | to raise to a higher point (a parcel, a chair, a person) |
| <i>to lift off</i> : | of a spacecraft: to rise from the launching site, from the runway |
| 9 <i>to sign off</i> : | to finish a letter by signing it, by putting one's signature |
| 10 <i>to sell off</i> : | to sell sth rather cheaply to get rid of it |

5 We understand and speak in collocations; complete the phrasal verbs and study the collocations both ways.

1 carry off – 2 make off with: leave in a hurry with, escape with – 3 call off (cancel) – 4 cut off (stop, interrupt) – 5 twist off (to remove, take off by sharply turning sth, by unscrewing) – 6 pay off (pay completely, for example when a worker leaves for good) – 7 work off (make a person suffer for one's own anger) – 8 tip off (warn, give information to sb) – 9 shuffle off (try to pass (the blame, guilt) onto sb else) – 10 fight off sth (make sth leave, defeat – 11 shrug off sth (dismiss it as unimportant) – 12 ... wear off (decrease, disappear) – 13 ... (has) gone off (has become bad, is no longer edible) – 14 ... are paying off (are successful) – 15 ... eased off (diminished, became less severe) – 16 ... came off (took place, occurred)

6 Fill in the correct phrasal verbs and explain their meaning in your own words.

1 booted ... off – 2 Tick ... off – 3 clock off/clock out – 4 eased off – 5 fired off – 6 run off – 7 screened off – 8 set off – 9 shipped off – 10 shut off – 11 start off – 12 sweat ... off – 13 stood off – 14 twisted ... off – 15 were ... off – 16 working off

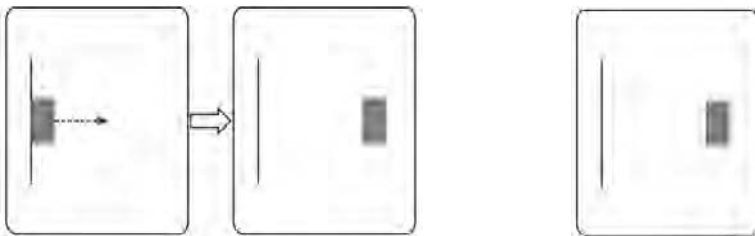
7 Replace the content of the following sentences by a verb + off.

1 I must be off – 2 They saw her off – 3 Keep off the grass – 4 Ten workers were laid off – 5 They triggered/sparked off/set off (riots) – 6 run off a hundred copies – 7 Doctors have written him off. – 8 I think we'd better/had better put off/call off the meeting – 9 He cut off the speaker. – 10 ... tipped off about the crime – 11 ... I have to ring off now – 12 ... (the food) is off

7 AWAY is disappearing

Away is the seventh most frequently used adverb; it is illustrated by some 60 examples. It is only used as an adverb, not as a preposition. Spatially it is often used with the source of motion, for instance *run away from*, *be away from home*, *one mile away from here*, etc.

7.1 AWAY: leaving a place or not being at it



back away – blew ... away – broke away – drove away/roared away – fly away – get away – go away – keep away – ran away – send ... away – throw ... away – took ... away

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 Children, please from the fire, it is dangerous. | k..... |
| 2 That bad dog won't bite if you from it. | b..... |
| 3 The thieves when they heard the police car siren. | r..... |
| 4 I don't want to see you any more., you liar, he yelled. | G |
| 5 The authorities ... the little girl ... from her parents. | t..... |
| 6 The fierce dog from his owner and attacked several people. | br..... |
| 7 The car /... .. at high speed. | dr..... /r..... |
| 8 I wish I could from my work for a few days. | g..... |
| 9 Strong winds quickly ... the black clouds | bl..... |
| 10 They decided to ... their son ... to a boarding-school. | s |
| 11 Just ... the newspaper ... when you've finished with it. | thr |
| 12 Most songbirds in autumn, migrating to the south. | fl..... |

Glosses: **1** stay at a distance – **2** move backwards while looking at the dog, the cause of one's fear – **4** liar: person who lies, does not tell the truth; he shouted – **6** escaped from –

7 roared away: disappeared fast and with a lot of noise – 10 a school where students stay/sleep during the term

Spatially or literally, **away** commonly means that if there are two objects in the same place, one of them leaves this place. The removal or disappearance of the given object from its environment may be temporary or final. Obviously, such separations may involve any number of objects, not just two.

In pairs or small groups paraphrase the words/verbs you are unfamiliar with and show how **away** contributes to the meaning of the phrasal verb.

Exetext 1

are away – called away – clean away – cut ... away – is ... away – shied away – snatched ... away – stay away from – swept away – turned away from – wiped away

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1 When I was young, I was not a party goer, I from large crowds. | sh..... |
| 2 I was from the meeting by an important telephone call. | c..... |
| 3 The meat will taste better if you don't ... the fat .../off before roasting it. | c..... |
| 4 The university ... only a quarter of an hour ... from here. | i |
| 5 Our neighbours on holiday for the whole month. | a..... |
| 6 A good piece of advice: that area at night. | st..... |
| 7 Hundreds of fans had to be the stadium. | t |
| 8 He his tears and tried to regain his composure. | w..... |
| 9 Please the plates and bring us some coffee. | cl..... |
| 10 A youngster on a motorcycle ... my sister's bag | sn..... |
| 11 The hurricane many cars and caravans. | sw |

Glosses: 1 I did not go to parties because of shyness or of lack of confidence – 3 roast: cook (meat) in an oven or over a fire – 7 were refused entry – 8 regain his composure: get back or find a normal, calm state of mind – 9 remove, take away – 10 took away, grabbed suddenly and with violence – 11 hurricane: storm; moved, displaced (vehicles) with violence

Exetext 2

drag ... away from – grabbed ... away – hurl away – lock ... away – lured away – moved ... away – put ... away – slip away from – woo ... away from – yank ... away from

- 1 The thief ... my handbag ... as I was at the bus stop. gr.....
- 2 When will you finally ... your books ...? p.....
- 3 The police ... everyone ... from the station, but it was a hoax (call). m.....
- 4 The young boy managed to the grenade before it exploded. h.....
- 5 You should always ... your jewellery ... in a safe. l.....
- 6 Y... that knife ... from the boy before he hurts himself. Y
- 7 The child was with a promise of a piece of cake. l.....
- 8 ... yourself ... from your work and let's go and have lunch together. Dr.....
- 9 I'll do my best to the party early tonight. sl
- 10 That new company will try to ... you your present job. w

Glosses: **1** pulled away violently – **3** a hoax (call): a lie, a deception intended as a joke – **5** safe: a strong (steel) box with a lock difficult to open in which one stores valuable things – **6** yank away: pull away violently – **7** attracted – **8** leave not without difficulty – **9** to disappear in a discrete way so as not to be noticed – **10** attract you so that you leave your job and join them

7.2 AWAY: gradual and continuously growing distance

draining ... away – drinking ... away – dwindled away – fading away – hammering away at – idling away – rot away – rust away – slaves away – work away/toil away at

- 1 Once John embarks on a project, he will/... ... it for months. w /t.....
- 2 Have you noticed that grandfather is? f.....
- 3 As the days passed the hope of finding the castaway dw
- 4 Don't in the house all day, come with us and have some fun. r.....
- 5 The car will if it is exposed to the salty sea air all the time. r.....
- 6 Father is unemployed and mother all day in a difficult job. sl

- 7 Our teachers kept our duties. h
- 8 It's sad to see how he is his youth. What a shame! i
- 9 What can we do, but Steve is ... his father's fortune dr
- 10 Unfortunately at that time high inflation was ... our savings dr

Glosses: **1** work hard, meticulously, continually for a long time – **2** his health is changing slowly for the worse, getting weaker, thinner – **3** castaway: shipwrecked people (ending up on an island, in a lonely place); disappeared gradually, diminished – **4** rot: decay; rot away: here, gradually getting more and more in a poor mental state – **5** rust: decay of iron or metal materials; rusting away: the car is being affected by rust and its metal is losing its strength and quality – **6** works like a slave – **7** insisted all the time the way one beats on a nail with a hammer – **8** wastes his youth doing nothing – **10** draining away one's money: taking it away gradually and often continuously

There is an analogy on the one hand between objects leaving or getting separated from their physical environment and on the other hand the way people move away gradually and continuously from their normal states of work, health, hope, rest, time, etc.

In pairs paraphrase the less common words and show how the meaning above is expressed by the verb + **away**.

- Ex. 1 **work away/toil away:** the person lives for and works on his project which removes him steadily from a normal way of life
- 2 **fading away:** grandfather is getting weaker, moving gradually and continuously away from a normal state of vigour, life, health

Exetext 3

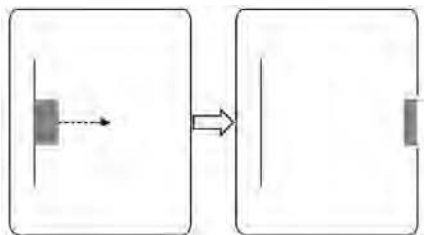
burning away – chat away – crumbling away – get away with – scratch away – smooth away – ticking away – washing away/wearing away – weeping ... away – withered away

- 1 After World War II (two) the British Empire started cr
- 2 I'm sure they will manage to their problems. sm
- 3 The sea is some of the famous cliffs of Dover. w...../w.....
- 4 We were all anxiously waiting while the minutes were t
- 5 The hopes of the stranded survivors being picked up w.....
- 6 How can you hours and hours on internet? ch.....
- 7 If you the surface, you'll find that the problem is complex. scr.....
- 8 Since her death I have been w... whole days w.....

- 9 After the explosion the fire in the oil tanker was for two days. b.....
- 10 If he thinks he can this rude behaviour he is mistaken. g.....

Glosses: **1** gradually breaking up into smaller pieces which get separated or independent, the way crumbs or small pieces get (broken off) from bread or biscuits – **2** smooth: even, without any rough patches or bumps; to remove problems, difficulties disappear or less serious so that life/relations are like a smooth surface – **3** cliffs: high and steep rocks along the sea; the water is attacking and removing them slowly – **4** passing – **5** stranded: abandoned, without help (on an island); withered: became weaker before disappearing, the way plants get dry and die without water – **6** talk and talk in a friendly way – **7** remove the surface layer with a sharp object so that you can examine in depth – **8** crying day after day – **9** burning slowly, gradually, continuously completely – **10** can behave without respect, in an impolite way without being punished

7.3 AWAY: complete disappearance



boiled away, throw away – died away/faded away – faint away – gamble away – gave away – got carried away – grown away – melted away – passed away – shut away – washed away – went away

- 1 Towards the end of her life she (all) her money to the poor. g.....
- 2 The sounds of the violin /... .. . d..... /f.....
- 3 The water had (all) and we had to the burnt kettle. b..... /thr.....
- 4 It's very sad, but she has from her parents. gr.....
- 5 Our old aunt last week. She was eighty-four. p.....
- 6 I took this tablet and my headache in no time. w.....
- 7 His footprints in the sand were quickly by the sea. w.....
- 8 Why did he all his money in casinos? g.....

- 9 When the sun came out, the snow on the roof in a few hours. m
- 10 I'll just if I don't get something to eat soon. f
- 11 People with mental diseases used to be in asylums. sh
- 12 I gave the student too high a mark, but I by her outstanding command of English. g

Glosses: 2 became faint, weak, disappeared gradually and completely – 3 had evaporated completely through boiling – 4 has become alienated, moved away completely so as not to have any relationship with them any more – 5 (euphemism for getting away from life completely = die) – 7 disappeared – 8 gamble away: lose money through playing games of chance in casinos – 10 lose consciousness (completely) – 12 by getting (over)enthusiastic I departed from my normal behaviour

Since **away** often focuses on the (growing) distance between objects, this sense can easily be extended to contexts in which the gradual leaving leads to the complete disappearance. As a result different tenses with the same verb may express either “a gradual and continuously growing distance (7.2)” or “a complete disappearance (7.3)”.

7.4 AWAY: key

7.1 Away: leaving a place or not be at it

1 keep away – 2 back away – 3 ran away – 4 Go away – 5 took ... away – 6 broke away – 7 drove/roared away – 8 get away – 9 blew ... away – 10 send ... away – 11 throw ... away – 12 fly away

Exetest 1

1 shied away < shy – 2 called away – 3 cut ... away – 4 is ... away – 5 are away – 6 stay away from – 7 turned away from – 8 wiped away – 9 clean away – 10 snatched ... away – 11 swept away

Exetest 2

1 grabbed ... away – 2 put ... away – 3 moved ... away – 4 hurl away – 5 lock ... away – 6 Yank ... away – 7 lured away – 8 Drag ... away – 9 slip away from – 10 woo ... away from

7.2 Away: gradual and continuously growing distance

1 work away/toil away at – 2 fading away – 3 dwindled away – 4 rot away – 5 rust away – 6 slaves away – 7 hammering away at – 8 idling away – 9 drinking ... away – 10 draining ... away

Exetest 3

1 crumbling away – 2 smooth away – 3 washing away/wearing away – 4 ticking away – 5 withered away – 6 chat away – 7 scratch away – 8 weeping ... away – 9 burning away – 10 get away with

7.3 Away: complete disappearance

1 gave away – 2 died away/faded away – 3 boiled away, throw away – 4 grown away – 5 passed away – 6 went away – 7 washed away – 8 gamble away – 9 melted away – 10 faint away – 11 shut away – 12 got carried away

7.5 Expand and test your knowledge of 'away'

1 *What are the main senses of 'away'? Illustrate them with a few examples.*

2 *Learn to think in collocations. Associate the following verbs/nouns tightly.*

What could you:

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|--|
| 1 | <i>kiss away?</i> | tears, a child's fears, sb's anger, sb's worries |
| 2 | ..... | dirt; corrupt practices, old-fashioned values, traditions |
| 3 | ..... | thieves, burglars, intruders, customers, birds, animals (rabbits) |
| 4 | ..... | valuable things: jewellery, shares, money; criminals in gaols/jails |
| 5 | ..... | dirt, the upper layer, a surface |
| 6 | ..... | folds, creases in clothes; difficulties, trouble |
| 7 | ..... | (<i>from</i>) one's former beliefs, ideas, family; one's guards, policemen |
| 8 | ..... | a knife, a gun, dangerous toys; pain, one's freedom |
| 9 | ..... | one's worries, fear, tears; one's time with one's friends |

- 10 one's money, fortune; one's luck, one's youth
- 11 a handbag, a wallet, a document
- 12 one's time, one's youth, a whole weekend (doing nothing)

In pairs alternatively cover up one part and come up with the other.

3 Provide paraphrases for the following phrasal verbs.

- 1 to wipe away
- 2 to hurl away
- 3 to sweep away
- 4 to burn away
- 5 to rust away
- 6 to clear away
- 7 to fade away
- 8 to crumble away

Then cover up one part and try to recall the other part spontaneously.

4 Explain some similarities and differences between:

1 to work away/to slave away – 2 to throw away/to hurl away – 3 to take away/to grab away – 4 to pull away/to yank away – 5 to leave/to sneak away – 6 to leave, to go away/to dash away – 7 to drive away/to roar away – 8 to die/to pass away – 9 to fade/to wither away – 10 to put away/to lock away – 11 to burn/to burn away

5 Replace the words in italics by a 'verb + away'.

- 1 He continued working for weeks on end.
- 2 He became weaker and weaker.
- 3 She will be absent till next week.
- 4 How can he spend his time doing nothing?
- 5 He has gradually lost a close relationship with them.
- 6 She died last year.
- 7 All the water evaporated.
- 8 Could you remove the dishes from the table?
- 9 He left the place with great force, speed and noise.

- 10 The aggressive dog made all visitors leave in fear.
 11 By her very presence she made the tension disappear.

6 Which verbs have a negative connotation or sense? Explain why.

1 get away with – 2 gamble away – 3 be away – 4 snatch away – 5 get carried away – 6 toil away – 7 laugh away – 8 pass away – 9 wither away – 10 grab away – 11 stay away from – 12 slave away – 13 scare away/off

7.6 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'away''

2 Complete the collocations and associate their parts tightly.

1 kiss away? – 2 sweep away? – 3 frighten away? – 4 lock away? – 5 scratch away? – 6 smooth away? – 7 break away from? – 8 take away? – 9 laugh away? – 10 gamble away? – 11 snatch away? – 12 idle away?

3 Provide paraphrases for the following phrasal verbs.

1 remove sth by rubbing with a hand or piece of cloth – 2 throw away with violence (a stone, a grenade) – 3 push or move away dirt with a broom – 4 continue burning – 5 disappear through the action of rust – 6 disappear or remove from a surface (dishes, papers, leaves) – 7 become weaker and weaker – 8 fall into small pieces, disintegrate slowly (an empire, a building)

4 Explain the similarities and differences between:

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1 <i>work/slave away:</i> | both mean to work hard, <i>but slave away</i> has a more negative connotation due to 'slave') |
| 2 <i>throw/hurl away:</i> | (b) throw violently and as far away as possible |
| 3 <i>take/grab away:</i> | (b) take suddenly and firmly (an object, a purse) |
| 4 <i>pull/yank away:</i> | (b) pull suddenly and very firmly or violently |
| 5 <i>leave/sneak away:</i> | (b) leave a place but quietly so as not to be noticed |
| 6 <i>leave/dash away:</i> | (b) leave extremely fast |
| 7 <i>drive/roar away:</i> | (b) drive away very fast while making a lot of noise |
| 8 <i>die/pass away:</i> | (b) a euphemism or less direct or blunt equivalent for 'to die' |
| 9 <i>fade/wither away:</i> | both verbs are mainly used with plants: to dry up and to die |

- 10 *put aside/lock away*: (b): put things away in a place fastening them with a key so that other people cannot open or access them
- 11 *to burn/burn away*: (b): continue burning until it is destroyed completely (by fire)

5 Replace the words in italics by a verb + 'away'.

1 worked/toiled away at – 2 faded away – 3 will be away – 4 idle away – 5 grew away from – 6 passed away – 7 boiled away – 8 clear away – 9 roared away – 10 scared ... away – 11 smoothed away

6 Which verbs have a negative connotation? Explain why.

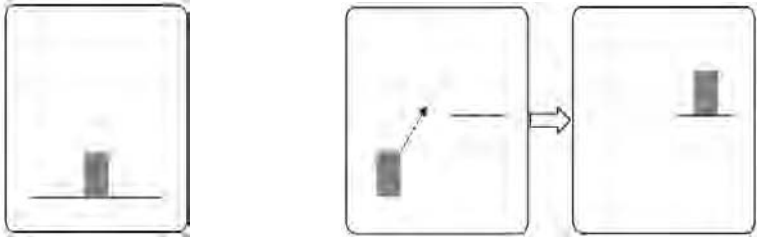
- 1 *get away with*: is said when one is not punished or criticized despite the fact that one did sth which should not have been done
- 2 *gamble away*: to waste money by betting on the results of games, competitions
- 4 *snatch away*: depending on the circumstances and the object that is *snatched away*; the verb can have a negative or positive sense. Ex.: neg.: in case of a theft; positive: if a person saves a child by *snatching it away* so that it is not run over by a car
- 6 *toil away*: rather negative, since one works very hard and continuously like a slave, for a long time
- 8 *pass away*: euphemism for *die*
- 9 *wither away*: gradually becoming weaker (esp. of a plant) until it disappears and/or dies
- 10 *grab away*: negative or positive depending on the object, the circumstances or the reason why one grabs sth away; the verb often implies violence
- 12 *slave away*: to work very hard all the time, like a slave
- 13 *scare away/off*: make a person leave or stay away by frightening

8 ON is contact

On is the sixth most frequently used particle (after *up, out, off, in, down*); it is exemplified here by some 50 phrasal verbs and compounds. **On** is, however, especially frequent as a preposition. It emphasizes the presence of contact. Two objects (often an entity and a larger surface) may touch each other, be close to each other or get closer to each other. It goes without saying that both entities can be abstract.

When one of the objects that come into contact is known, or the context allows us to identify it, the latter does not have to be mentioned. For instance, an activity such as *banging on the door* is usually done with one's fist, thus the word *fist* will usually be left out unless it is important in the context.

8.1 ON: contact or getting closer to make contact



- 1 The neighbours are laying a brand-new carpet ... the floor.
- 2 Hang the painting ... that wall opposite the door.
- 3 The two cars bumped into each other head-...
- 4 The children banged ... the door as if we were deaf.
- 5 Shall I hang your coat ... the coat rack?
- 6 We met ... the plane, ... the train, ... the bus.
- 7 Does your car run ... diesel or ... petrol/US: gas?
- 8 You can count ... me, I am ... your side.
- 9 The lights are ..., but nobody seems to be in.
- 10 Could you sew the button ... for me? I have no needle or thread.
- 11 Can you help me pull ... my wellingtons?

Glosses: **I** totally new – **10** be in: be at home – **11** wellingtons: rubber boots often reaching up to the knees

Exetest 1

bear on – decided on – have got ... on – hinges ... on/depends ... on – is on – let on about – put on – take on – touch on

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 I am sorry, but I no money ... me. | h |
| 2 His fate will be by a committee. | d |
| 3 The company the brink of bankruptcy. | i |
| 4 My presentation ran late, so I wasn't able to my last point. | t |
| 5 The cunning fellow did not his real intentions. | l |
| 6 You are tired because you too much work/responsibility. | t |
| 7 If you eat too much, you will weight very fast. | p |
| 8 The implications of the study all aspects of daily life. | b |
| 9 The validity of your claims ... to a large extent ... the facts you
can back them up with. | h /d..... |

Glosses: 3 *on the brink: on the verge of, is close to – 4 talk about, expand on – 5 cunning: clever at deceiving people; did not let on about: did not show, reveal – 8 apply to, affect – 9 to a large extent: to a large degree; to back (the validity) up with facts: to support, to prove, give evidence, showing that the claims are justified, true*

Notice how the meaning of the verbs has already moved from spatial to metaphorical.

Exetest 2

caught on – fixed ... on – had on – hurried on to – is on – is on/hooked on – left ... on – on – parked on – put ... on (2x) – send ... on to – switch ... on – was on

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 ... my mail my new address, will you? | S |
| 2 Unfortunately he drugs/he is drugs. | i /h..... |
| 3 We are a slope, you'd better ... the handbrake | p /p..... |
| 4 I was told that the plane crash the news. | w..... |
| 5 You looked very nice in the new dress you at the party. | h |
| 6 The new fashion immediately. | c..... |
| 7 I ... a new aerial ... the car; the old one was broken off by
hooligans. | f |
| 8 Can you hear that noise upstairs: someone has ... a tap | l |
| 9 The bus was coming, so we the bus stop. | h |

- 10 Should we ... the heating ...? It's a bit chilly, isn't it? p.....
- 11 ... the light ..., I can't see anything. Sw.....
- 12 Is there anything interesting ... TV tonight? o.....
- 13 She the committee/... the staff. i.....

Glosses: **1** forward – **2** completely dependent, not able to do without – **5** you were wearing – **6** became very popular – **13** she is part of, a member of

In pairs choose the sentences with verbs + **on** expressing metaphorical meanings and show how **on** contributes to the meaning of the verb.

Ex. 2 **is on/is hooked on:** he needs drugs all the time, they are or have to be so to say 'on' him, i.e. *in* him

8.2 ON: from contact to closeness



- 1 Shakespeare was born in Stratford-...-Avon.
- 2 Edinburgh is ... the East Coast whereas Glasgow is ... the West Coast.
- 3 Our friends have a beautiful cottage ... Lake Ontario.
- 4 They settled down in a small village ... the coast.
- 5 They live .../close to the border.
- 6 I assure you, I'm wholeheartedly ... your side.

Glosses: **3** cottage: a small house in the country – **6** wholeheartedly: completely, fully

Sometimes **on** denotes not contact but *closeness*, as when a town is close to the sea or a house is near a lake, a river.

8.3 ON: time viewed as a surface

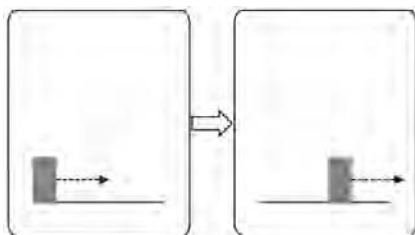


- 1 I would prefer if you came *later* ... tonight?
- For years we have met *off and .../from time to time*.
- We'll meet ... Sunday or ... Monday.
- ... January 15, ... that day.
- ... Christmas Eve, ... New Year's Day.
- ... my birthday which is ... October 25.
- I learned about it ... my arrival (= when I arrived).
- 5 At that time we happened to be ... holiday/... a trip.

On has also numerous metaphorical uses. Time – an abstraction – is not only viewed as a *container* (*in* April, *in* a week's time, *in* a year or two) but also as a *surface*: **on** Monday, **on** that very moment, etc.

The preposition **at** expresses time: **at** 2 o'clock, **at** noon, **at** night, **at** sixty.

8.4 ON: continuation of an action or situation



be on the way – come on/go on – dragging on – getting on with – go on – is ... on – move on – on and on – rambled ... on – walked on

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1 As the weather was nice we for hours and hours. | w |
| 2 She must to the States now. | b |
| 3 It's getting dark and we still have a long way to go. Let's! | m |
| 4 We walked ... and ... for miles. | o |
| 5 Let's; we will eat when we reach the shelter. | g |
| 6, boys! Let's g... ..! | C |
| 7 The strike ... still (going) | i |
| 8 As the meeting was, several members dozed off/dropped off. | dr |
| 9 As usual, the old boss for ever. | r |
| 10 How are you your work? | g |

Glosses: **1** the repetition of the word 'hours' suggests that the walk lasted a long time (cf. 4: *on and on*) – **3** *continue* – **4** *on and on: continuously, without stopping* – **5** *continue*; *shelter: a small, simple building often made of wood, to protect from the weather* – **7** *strike: an organized refusal to work* – **9** *talked for a long time in a disorganized way* – **10** *is the work advancing, progressing*

Though **on** is a typical 'contact preposition' it can also be used to express the duration of motion. action along a surface. If the motion is towards a markedly higher level, the form **on to** is used.

Exetest 3

battled on – carry on/get on – cling on to – dwell on – fight on – handed on/passed on – hold on/pass ... on to – piling on – rattling on – talked on – waved ... on – wore on/dragged on – work on

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 1 The two armies throughout the night. | b |
| 2 Don't disturb me. Please let me /... .. with my work. | c...../g..... |
| 3 My grandparents from Italy still the old ways of life. | cl..... |
| 4 Until recently traditional customs were /... .. from father to son. | h ...../p..... |
| 5 The biology teacher exaggerates: he keeps additional work. | p |
| 6 The meeting /... .. for hours on end. | w...../dr..... |
| 7 It's counter-productive to one's misfortunes all the time. | dw..... |
| 8 We should not give up, we must | f |
| 9 H... .. please, I'll ... you ... to the boss if he is in. | H...../p..... |
| 10 Do you mind if I and finish my paper? | w..... |
| 11 She tried in vain to get a word in edgeways, but he was | r |
| 12 As we hadn't seen each other for so long we for hours. | t |
| 13 A traffic warden stood at the crossroads and ... the cars | w..... |

Glosses: **1** fought on < fight – **3** are very much attached to – **5** giving a lot of work – **6** lasted; on end: without stopping, a very long time – **7** counter-productive: has the opposite effect than the one intended; to continually talk, think about – **9** keep listening, do not put down the receiver – **10** work on: continue working – **11** she was unable to interrupt; he was talking very fast without stopping – **13** waved ... on: signalled by hand that the cars could pass

8.5 ON: cause – effect viewed as two entities in contact

Since **on** stresses contact of an entity with a surface, it can occur in any situation in which an activity affects a given object or in which one event causes another event. Take for instance:

- (a) John **put/laid** the blame **on** Mary.
- (b) Bob's pneumonia was most likely **brought on** because he was caught in a bad storm.

In (a) metaphorically speaking, John's utterance *fixes on* Mary (according to him, the cause) the responsibility for whatever happened;

In (b) the event of Bob's becoming wet and cold causes another event – his pneumonia. And these two events can be seen as objects *touching upon* each other.

acted on – blame ... on – bordered on – brought on – dawned on – embarking on – encroaching on – fed ... on – impinge on

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1 Students often ... their poor results ... their teachers. | bl..... |
| 2 She has barely finished one book and is already another project. | em..... |
| 3 What he said lunacy/the absurd. | b..... |
| 4 It suddenly me that the painting was a fake. | d..... |
| 5 The budget cuts the research efforts of all departments. | imp..... |
| 6 The poor kid ... his mind ... rubbish and wound up much the worse for it. | f..... |
| 7 The dictator's ruthless rule his own downfall. | br..... |
| 8 The urban sprawl of the neighbouring cities is the surrounding farmland. | en..... |
| 9 He pure misguidance, much to everyone's subsequent discomfort. | a..... |

Glosses: **1** *hold their teachers responsible for their poor results* – **2** *starting on* – **3** *was similar, close to* – **4** *I suddenly realised* – **5** *have a (negative) impact, effect* – **6** *rubbish, trash: things of very poor quality; finished* – **7** *ruthless: without pity or feeling for others; led to < lead* – **8** *sprawl: the spreading, expansion of cities in a disorganized way; encroaching: entering, intruding on the farmland*

In pairs choose a few sentences and (1) paraphrase, explain less common words, and (2) show how **on** expresses a 'cause – effect' relationship.

- Ex. 1 **blame ... on** the teachers: the teachers are the cause of the poor results (consequence)
 2 **is embarking on**: the finishing of one book leads to/causes the beginning or embarking on another one

8.6 ON: key

Exetest 1

1 have got ... on – 2 decided on – 3 is on – 4 touch on – 5 let on about – 6 take on – 7 put on – 8 bear on – 9 hinges ... on/depends ... on

Exetest 2

1 Send ... on to – 2 is on/hooked on – 3 parked on, put ... on – 4 was on – 5 had on – 6 caught on – 7 fixed ... on – 8 left ... on – 9 hurried on to – 10 put ... on – 11 Switch ... on – 12 on – 13 is on

8.4 ON: continuation of an action or situation

1 walked on – 2 be on the way to – 3 move on – 4 on and on – 5 go on – 6 Come on, go on – 7 is (going) on – 8 dragging on – 9 rambled on – 10 getting on with

Exetest 3

1 battled on – 2 carry on/get on – 3 cling on to – 4 handed on/passed on – 5 piling on – 6 wore on/dragged on – 7 dwell on – 8 fight on – 9 Hold on/pass ... on to – 10 work on – 11 rambling on – 12 talked on – 13 waved ... on

8.5 ON: cause – effect viewed as two entities in contact

1 blame ... on – 2 embarking on – 3 bordered on – 4 dawned on – 5 impinge on – 6 fed ... on – 7 brought on – 8 encroaching on – 9 acted on

8.7 Expand and test your knowledge of ‘on’

1 Point out the features of ‘on’ and substantiate them with a few examples.

2 Fill in the phrasal verbs and paraphrase them.

- 1 In every conversation he for ever about how clever his children are. r/r.....
- 2 We have no choice, we have to str

- 3 I didn't have enough time to the brakes, and crashed into a house. sl
- 4 How is your work? g
- 5 If you like this, I know you will end up in prison. c
- 6 Sorry I'm late, but Harry /endlessly. t
- 7 This unusual fashion is unbelievably fast. c
- 8 How long will this meeting still? dr
- 9 People while the boy was being assaulted, but no-one dared to help. l
- 10 Could you this dress please? tr

3 Replace the expressions with phrasal verbs.

- 1 become fatter
- 2 push quickly and vigorously on the brakes
- 3 have a friendly relationship with people
- 4 become fashionable
- 5 not to be able to live without drugs
- 6 make light
- 7 accuse others of being at fault/the cause
- 8 become clear to me
- 9 move from one activity/point to another
- 10 what is the programme for tonight
- 11 forward a letter to another address
- 12 be related to a certain subject
- 13 (be asked) to wait at one end of a telephone line
- 14 continue an activity
- 15 hold sb/sth firmly and for quite some time
- 16 continue fighting
- 17 be close, similar to (absurdity)
- 18 come down suddenly and violently
- 19 talk non-stop and very fast
- 20 tell sth which had to be kept secret

4 What are the similarities/differences between:

1 to send/to send on (mail) – 2 to hold onto/to cling onto sth – 3 to talk about/to dwell on (a subject) – 4 to think of/to chew on – 5 to rattle on – 6 on and on/on and off – 7 to give work/to pile on work – 8 to think of/to dawn on – 9 to battle on/to fight on – 10 to talk/to talk on – 11 to allude to/to touch on – 12 a collision/a head-on collision – 13 to go up to sb/to swoop down on sb – 14 to brake/to slam on the brakes

8.8 Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘on’’**2 Fill in the phrasal verbs and explain them in your own words.**

1 runs on/rambles on – 2 struggle on – 3 slam on – 4 getting on – 5 carry on – 6 talked on and on – 7 catching on – 8 drag on – 9 looked on – 10 try on

3 Replace the expressions with phrasal verbs.

1 to put on weight – 2 to slam on (the brakes) – 3 to get on/along (well) with sb – 4 to catch on – 5 to be hooked on – 6 to switch on (the light) – 7 to put the blame on – 8 to dawn on – 9 to pass on to – 10 what is on tonight – 11 to send on – 12 to bear on – 13 to hold on – 14 to carry on – 15 cling on to sth – 16 to fight on – 17 to border on (absurdity) – 18 to swoop (down) on – 19 to rattle on – 20 to let on (about)sth

4 What are the similarities/differences between:

1 <i>send on:</i>	to forward a letter to the addressee’s new address
2 <i>cling onto:</i>	to hold very tightly; to try to keep sth by all means
3 <i>dwell (up)on:</i>	think, speak or write a lot and often at great length about sth
4 <i>chew on:</i>	bite repeatedly on sth; to consider sth at length or repeatedly
5 <i>rattle on:</i>	to talk non-stop and in an uninteresting way
6 <i>on and on:</i>	without stopping > < <i>on and off:</i> now and then
7 <i>pile on work:</i>	to heap on work, to add a lot of work to the work existing already
8 <i>dawn on:</i>	it becomes (gradually) known, clear to sb
9 <i>battle/fight on:</i>	to continue to fight very hard for sth
10 <i>talk on:</i>	to talk without stopping

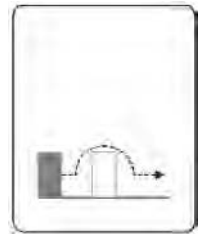
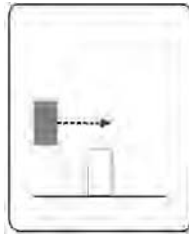
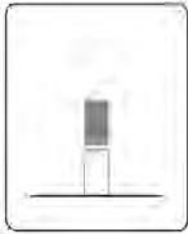
- 11 *allude to:* to mention sth only indirectly, not explicitly
touch on: to mention sth explicitly though only briefly, in passing
- 12 *a head-on collision:* a crash between two cars with their front parts/ bumpers
- 13 *go up to sb:* to move straight in the direction of a person till you are close to him
swoop down on sb: to move (often in group) towards sb to attack him/her
- 14 *slam on the brakes:* (in an emergency) push very hard and hurriedly on the brakes

9 OVER is higher than and close to

In terms of frequency **over** is in the ninth position with some 70 occurrences. It functions as a prefix, preposition and particle. In all these functions it expresses related meanings. As a prefix **over-** has **under-** as its opposite.

Typically i.e. spatially, **over** is used when one object moves *above* another object or from one side to the other side of this object. The path followed by the moving object often goes up first and then down.

9.1 OVER: being or moving higher than and close to sth or from one side to the other



clashed over – crosses over – escape over – flew over – going over – help ... over – move over to – over – overlooked – roared over – run over – send ... over to

- | | | |
|----|---|-----------|
| 1 | Around 10 pm our plane London. | fl |
| 2 | The sky .../above us was pitch black. | o |
| 3 | Our cat was by a car the day before yesterday. | r |
| 4 | The fugitives managed to the southern border. | esc |
| 5 | Three planes the town at very low altitude. | r |
| 6 | ... the old lady ... to the other side of the street, will you. | H..... |
| 7 | At traffic lights one only when the light is green. | cr |
| 8 | Please ... a taxi the Grand Hotel. | s |
| 9 | The speaker suggested we the next page of the handout. | m |
| 10 | He keeps the same story, but nobody believes him. | g |

- 11 The young couple the questions whether both should work. cl
- 12 Reread the letter carefully, you ... several spelling mistakes. o

Glosses: 2 pitch black: completely dark – 3 knocked down, perhaps killed – 9 move over to: pass on to; handout: pages of information given out at meetings – 11 disagreed seriously – 12 failed to notice, did not see

Over can also indicate that one entity is higher than and close to another one. The objects may, but do not have to, move or touch one another.

Notice how from S9 on the meanings of the verbs are no longer spatial but metaphorical.

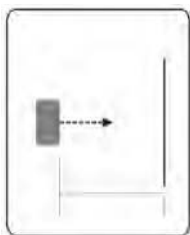
If the notion “close to” is absent, English often uses the preposition **above**, e.g. *The sun is right above us.*

In pairs paraphrase less common words or explain them and show how **over** carries the meanings mentioned above.

Ex. 10 **send ... over:** make the taxi come (closer) to the hotel

13 **clashed over:** it is as if the young couple were circling, moving above the problem, looking (down) at it while disagreeing about how to solve it

9.2 OVER: crossing a certain distance to get closer



asking over/inviting over – bring ... over – call ... over – came over – come over – going over – have ... over – see ... over/tide ... over – take over – turned ... over

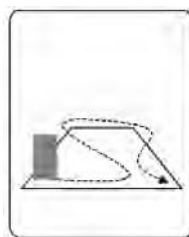
- 1 When will you finally and see us? c
- 2 I'm to Sue's (flat) for a chat. g

- 3 How many people are you .../... ... for the party? a..... /in.....
- 4 Why don't you ... your boyfriend ... to our place? br.....
- 5 I can't come tonight as we ... friends h.....
- 6 If you don't mind I'll ... the waiter c.....
- 7 I saw him for the first time in public, he as a born orator. c.....
- 8 Father grabbed the thief and ... him ... to the police. t.....
- 9 Here is some money, this should ... you .../... you ... till next month. s..... /t.....
- 10 When the boss retired, he made sure his best friend would t.....

Glosses: **1** visit us – **5** as friends will be visiting us – **7** I had/he gave the impression that he was an excellent orator – **8** delivered him to the police – **9** help you financially during a difficult period; tide: rise and fall of the sea level due to the attraction of the moon – **10** replaced him at the top, as head of ...

Over also means that an entity has to cover some distance – spatial or mental – to get closer to another object or goal. This is the case with visits, lending money temporarily to somebody, getting to know (better) a person, replacing a person in a certain job, etc.

9.3 OVER: Motion viewed as covering completely or even in excess



all over – covered over with – hanging over – over (2x) – rolled over and over – swarmed ... over – was ... over – well over – will be over

- 1 The police ... all ... the place during the drug raid. sw.....
- 2 The valley was a thick layer of snow. c.....
- 3 He is quite an experienced man; he has travelled the world. a.....

- 4 ... the next few weeks we'll have to make some important decisions. O
- 5 Shouldn't we cut down this branch that is ... the driveway? h
- 6 In 1945 World War II (Two) ... finally ... w
- 7 She must be ... forty now, close to fifty perhaps. w
- 8 The lecture lasted ... two hours longer than it was supposed to. o
- 9 Coming out of the bend at high speed the car skidded and ... ending up in the ditch. r

Glosses: 1 moved around in big numbers (like insects) – 5 a private road (for vehicles) from the street to a person's house – 8 lecture: talk given to an audience – 9 curve: bend, turn into the road; skidded: slid (< slide) suddenly sideways as a result of turning too quickly; ending up: arriving finally; ditch: long narrow channel (often with water) along a road

In Western culture, space and time are often seen as objects that one can climb, walk on or cover, and going beyond a certain point in space or time is like *covering them completely or getting to the other side of these 'objects'*.

Exetext 1

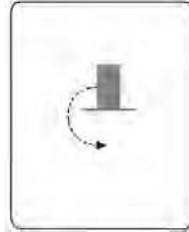
are over – argue ... over – boil over – bubbling over with – is over – over (3x) – smooth over – spilled ... over

- 1 Red wine ... the top of the glass and onto the carpet. sp
- 2 It's strange how a minor disagreement could ... into quite a quarrel. b
- 3 Sue was ... enthusiasm and excitement. b
- 4 A nice bouquet of flowers may help to ... the quarrel. sm
- 5 Specialists are convinced that we ... the worst of the recession. a
- 6 When a person dies, their relatives often ... endlessly ... money. a
- 7 "Proceed to Oxford Street. ...!" O
- 8 Cooper's book 'Aerobics' has sold well ... two million copies. o
- 9 You know, my relationship with Michael ... i
- 10 In dramatic circumstances, one has no control ... one's emotions. o

Glosses: 1 spill ... over: coffee or another liquid flowing over the edge of a container – 3 bubbling over: was full of enthusiasm, life and energy – 4 reduce problems, calm down – 5 are over: have passed, are beyond – 6 relatives: family members – 9 is finished

Metaphorically, quantities, relations, people, events, states, situations are seen as entities which can cover completely or go beyond their limits or boundaries (excess).

9.4 OVER/UNDER: higher than/beyond or lower than/below the norm



overcharged – overdone – overestimate – overfed – overpopulated – overrate – overvalued – overweight

- 1 Maybe I *underrate* this colleague, but you definitely ... him.
- 2 Now she is slightly *underweight*, but she used to be 20 pounds
- 3 This region is *underpopulated*, but once it was
- 4 Our house used to be *undervalued*, but now it is
- 5 It is worse to *underestimate* the cost of something than to ... it.
- 6 I thought you *undercharged* me, but actually you ... me.
- 7 Their pets were *underfed* while the owners were
- 8 My steak is *underdone* and yours seems to be

Glosses: 1 *underrate*: do not evaluate enough – 2 *slightly*: a little bit – 6 *under-/overcharge*: ask too little/too much money for a service/for sth – 7 *house animals* (dog, cat, bird) as a companion – 8 *under-/overdone*: cooked too little/too much

In addition to forming phrasal verbs, **over** occurs also as a prefix. In this combination, it usually has the sense of ‘excess’, i.e. beyond or more than what we generally consider as the *norm*.

A norm is by definition neutral or good. But when one moves away from the norm (one way or the other, i.e. **more than/beyond the norm** as signalled by **over-** or **less than/short of** the norm which is indicated by **under-**), the derivations often have negative or pejorative connotations.

Exetext 2

overburden – overly/(over)cautious – overcome (2x) – overcrowded – overdose – overdrawn – overdue – overflows – overgrown – overload – overloaded – overshot – oversimplified – overslept – overtime – overturned

- 1 I didn't hear my alarm clock go off, so I ... and missed the train.
- 2 Last month I worked 15 hours This cannot go on.
- 3 Suddenly the car started skidding and then ... into the ditch.
- 4 There is such an ... of work, we cannot even take time off for lunch.
- 5 I'm sorry to say this, but you give an ... account of the problem.
- 6 She was almost unable to ... her grief at her husband's death.
- 7 The whole garden was ... with weeds and bushes.
- 8 Language learners had to ... their memory with endless lists of words.
- 9 Almost every other year the river ... its banks.
- 10 Do you realize that your bank account is ... again?
- 11 The plane ... the runway and ended up in a hangar.
- 12 An .../... driver may be as dangerous as a reckless one.
- 13 With so many people the exhibition was no fun, all the halls were
- 14 These bills are all They must be paid at once.
- 15 Several firemen were ... by noxious gas and fumes.
- 16 The ferry capsized because it was ... with lorries on one side.
- 17 The drug addict died from an ... of heroin.

Glosses: **1** slept too long – **4** too big a quantity – **6** to deal with, to control; grief: sadness – **7** weeds: plants, grass – **9** the slopes on each side of a river – **10** an overdrawn

account: with a negative balance: more money is taken out than it contains – 11 over-shot: went beyond the target, here: the runway or long hard strip of land on which a plane lands or from which it takes off – 12 daring: brave, bold – 14 overdue: not paid though they should have been; at once: immediately – 15 noxious: harmful, poisonous – 16 capsized (esp. of a boat): turned over

Notice how **overly** (12) can be joined to many adjectives/adverbs changing their meanings (to excessively) negatively: **overly** familiar, **overly** generous, **overly** concerned, etc

Exetest 3

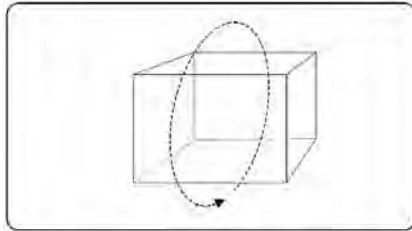
undercover – undercut – underdeveloped – underdog – undergo – underhand – underlying – undermined – underneath – underrated – undersized – undertaken – underwear

- 1 We found the letter ... the other documents.
- 2 He couldn't find his shirt and trousers and was running around in his
- 3 It is of vital importance for you to understand the ... principles.
- 4 The ... agent infiltrated the leftist group.
- 5 Supermarkets ... corner shops by up to 20%.
- 6 My impression is that her poetry is seriously ... by critics.
- 7 His health was ... by heavy drinking.
- 8 Barely 25 years ago Nabonia was still an ... country.
- 9 I hate all this ... manipulation to oust the president.
- 10 Many children born during the war remained
- 11 Ireland has certainly proved to be the ... in its struggle against Britain.
- 12 You look worn out, I'm afraid you've ... too much.
- 13 Mother has to ... minor surgery next week.

Glosses: – 3 *underlying: basic, important, but not (necessarily) visible* – 4 *an agent who is spying on people while giving the impression to work with or for them* – 5 *undercut: offer goods at a lower price* – 7 *weakened* – 9 *underhand: secret and dishonest; oust: to remove the president from his job* – 11 *Ireland was thought of as being weaker* – 13 *experience sth unpleasant or painful*

Sentences 1–3 contain words with *under-* meaning ‘not visible’; they are not negative. Cf. however 4.

9.5 OVER: examining thoroughly from all sides



aching all over – chew ... over – lingered ... over – looked over – talk ... over – thinking ... over – turning ... over (2x) – turning over and over

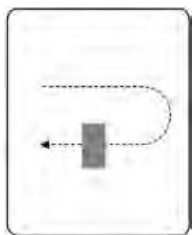
- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 ... the pages ... frantically, he tried to find the right passage. | T |
| 2 He was in bed, unable to fall asleep. | t..... |
| 3 I'm , doctor. | a |
| 4 Give me some time to ... it ... with my husband. | th..... |
| 5 I suggest that we ... the problem ... with our friends. | t..... |
| 6 You could see that he was ... the problem ... in his mind. | t..... |
| 7 I thought that the speaker ... too long ... trivial problems. | l..... |
| 8 The lawyer the document and disagreed with several points. | l..... |
| 9 I told the boss what I thought of him, so now he can ... it | ch |

Glosses: *thoroughly*: very closely, done with great attention – **1** *frantically*: very nervously, anxiously – **3** *all over*: everywhere – **6** *thinking about it very carefully* – **7** *trivial*: unimportant – **8** *read carefully* – **9** *lit. think a lot about it carefully, from all angles, similarly to the way one turns around one's food while biting on it*

Other figurative or extended meanings of **over** are related to subjects one *talks, thinks or feels* about. These subjects are viewed as concrete objects which one turns carefully around in order to examine them closely and completely from all sides.

In pairs pick out a few verbs and show how **over** conveys the meaning of ‘thoroughly, from all sides’.

9.6 OVER: reflexive motion or completely bent



bent over – falls over – leaned over – overthrew – tipped over – tripped over

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1 Little Sofia has started walking, but she still regularly. | f |
| 2 He the fence to catch a better view of the parade. | l |
| 3 I lost my footing and the tin of paint. | t |
| 4 It was dark and I nearly the bucket. | tr |
| 5 When I to pick up a heavy suitcase I felt a sharp pain in my back. | b |
| 6 The people finally ... the tyrant. | o |

Glosses: 2 *lean over/on:* to bend – 3 *tipped over:* to make sth fall/turn over – 4 *to (almost) fall by hitting;* bucket: a round open container with a handle to mainly carry water or other liquids – 6 *to remove sb from a position of power by using force*

9.7 OVER: key

9.1 Over: being or moving higher than and close to sth from one side to the other

1 flew over – 2 over (us) – 3 (was) run over – 4 escape over – 5 roared over – 6 Help ... over – 7 crosses over – 8 send ... over to – 9 move over to 10 going over – 11 clashed over – 12 overlooked

9.2 Over: crossing a certain distance to get closer

1 come over – 2 going over – 3 asking over/inviting over – 4 bring ... over – 5 have ... over – 6 call ... over – 7 came over – 8 turned ... over – 9 see ... over/tide ... over – 10 take over

9.3 Over: motion viewed as covering completely or even in excess

1 swarmed ... over – 2 covered over with – 3 all over – 4 Over – 5 hanging over – 6 was ... over – 7 well over – 8 over – 9 rolled over and over

Exetest 1

1 spilled ... over – 2 boil over – 3 bubbling over with – 4 smooth over – 5 are over – 6 argue ... over – 7 Over – 8 over – 9 is over – 10 over

9.4 Over/Under: higher/beyond or lower than/below the norm

1 overrate – 2 overweight – 3 overpopulated – 4 overvalued – 5 overestimate – 6 overcharged – 7 overfed – 8 overdone

Exetest 2

1 overslept – 2 overtime – 3 overturned – 4 overload – 5 oversimplified – 6 overcome – 7 overgrown – 8 overburden – 9 overflows – 10 overdrawn – 11 overshot – 12 overly cautious/overcautious – 13 overcrowded – 14 overdue – 15 overpowered – 16 overloaded – 17 overdose

Exetest 3

1 underneath – 2 underwear – 3 underlying – 4 undercover – 5 undercut – 6 underrated – 7 undermined – 8 underdeveloped – 9 underhand – 10 undersized – 11 underdog – 12 undertaken – 13 undergo

9.5 Over: examining thoroughly from all sides

1 Turning ... over – 2 turning over and over – 3 aching all over – 4 think ... over – 5 talk... over – 6 turning ... over – 7 lingered ... over – 8 looked over – 9 chew ... over

9.6 over: reflexive motion or completely bent

1 falls over – 2 leaned over – 3 tipped over – 4 tripped over – 5 bent over – 6 overthrew

9.8 Expand and test your knowledge of 'over(-)/under-'

1 *What are the main senses of 'over'. Comment on them and give examples.*

2 *Give the phrasal verbs corresponding to the definitions, paraphrases.*

- 1 Think about all aspects of the problem before taking action.
- 2 The person must be *older than* fifty.
- 3 Can I *come* with some friends to *your house*?
- 4 It's important to *do* the exercises several times.
- 5 He *tells* these stories all the time.
- 6 Nothing *remained* after the party.
- 7 Why did he *exaggerate*?
- 8 They *had an argument about* who decides in the end.
- 9 A friend *examined* the document *closely*.
- 10 The director *hardly mentioned* my case.
- 11 We should *examine* the next page in the document.
- 12 We *brought* the thief to the police.
- 13 Next week *it is the end of* the school year.
- 14 She was *incredibly happy* with the good news.
- 15 There were *more than* a thousand people.
- 16 He *appeared as/gave the impression of* being very tense.

3 Explain the following in your own words.

- 1 She travelled *all over* the world.
- 2 Could you *go over* this letter?
- 3 We *are over* the worst of the crisis.
- 4 Who will *take over* when you retire?
- 5 He can *stay over* tonight if he wants.
- 6 Can I *bring* my boyfriend *over*?
- 7 The car rolled *over and over*.
- 8 Stop *raking over* old ashes.
- 9 It *is over* between Jill and me.
- 10 Be careful not to *spill* my tea *over*.
- 11 I fell and *kicked* a vase *over*
- 12 He'll have to *chew over* this problem.
- 13 I'm aching *all over*.
- 14 Don't *overfeed* the birds.
- 15 Oh no, I'm ten pounds *overweight*!

4 Explain the following in your own words using all means at your disposal.

1 Be careful not to *overgeneralize* or *oversimplify*. – 2 You *overlooked* several typing and spelling mistakes. – 3 We were *overwhelmed* by the genuine kindness of these simple people. – 4 It's not healthy to *overcook/overdo* food. – 5 Do they pay you more when you work *overtime*? – 6 One should be very careful when *overtaking* cars on a two lane road. – 7 The decision was *overruled* by the Court of Appeal. – 8 The director has the right to *override* our decisions. – 9 As I had no alarm clock I *overslept*. – 10 My parents are very emotional and tend to *overreact* and be overconcerned. – 11 All holiday flights were *overbooked*. – 12 We are more and more *overloaded/overburdened* with red tape.

9.9 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'over(-)/under-''

2 Give the phrasal verbs corresponding to the definitions, paraphrases.

1 Think the problem over – 2 over fifty – 3 bring over – 4 go over – 5 goes over – 6 was left over – 7 go overboard – 8 clashed over – 9 looked over – 10 glossed over – 11 go over to – 12 handed ... over/turned ... over – 13 is over – 14 overjoyed – 15 over a thousand people – 16 came over as being very tense

3 Explain the following in your own words.

1 She travelled everywhere, covering all parts of the world. – 2 Could you read and examine this letter? – 3 The worst moments are passed, things are improving. – 4 Who will replace, succeed you, take responsibility? – 5 He can spend the night (here) if he feels like it. – 6 Can I come with my boyfriend to your house? – 7 The car turned over several times, repeatedly (reflexive). – 8 Stop talking about unhappy events of the past. – 9 The friendship is finished between Jill and me. – 10 Be careful not to let the tea go over the top of the cup. – 11 I made the vase fall by kicking it with my foot. – 12 He'll have to think about it, to consider it at great length. – 13 I have pain everywhere, in every part of my body. – 14 Do not give too much food to the birds (excess). – 15 I am ten pounds beyond my normal weight (excess).

4 Explain the following in your own words.

1 from a few instances one should not conclude that everybody is or behaves this way – *oversimplify*: distort a problem by reducing it to too small a number of features (excess). – 2 you failed to see mistakes (things typed wrongly), missed things that are wrong – 3 We were very moved, impressed by the authentic kindness – 4 to cook (food) too much and too long – 5 work longer or more hours than you should – 6 when one drives faster and passes other cars – 7 changed, rejected by a higher court – 8 to reject decisions taken by us (the personnel) – 9 I slept longer than I intended or than I should have – 10 too easily worried and react too strongly – 11 too many tickets/seats (than normally available) were sold to too many passengers – 12 we have to cope with too many administrative requirements (red tape)

10 BACK is returning

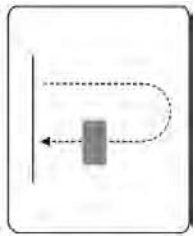
Back is the seventh most frequently used particle with some 50 examples. It is commonly used to indicate the return of an object/entity to its earlier/initial location. In the diagrams, the smaller box illustrates the moving object or entity, the horizontal line stands for the object's earlier/initial location and the bigger box symbolizes an object/entity which is somehow related to this location. To understand this, consider the sentence:

John has already given the book back to Mary,

where Mary is related to the book's initial location. Notice that the speaker does not mean that the book is necessarily in Mary's hands. What is meant is that it is **back** in Mary's possession and is most probably kept in a place to which Mary has access.

This meaning of **back** often requires the use of the preposition **to**: *She went back to Berlin.*

10.1 BACK: return to or stay at an earlier location



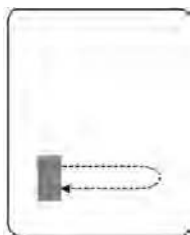
backed – drew back/pulled back – hand ... back – put ... back – stand back

- 1 As he didn't want the book, he ... it ... on the shelf. p.....
- 2 She /... .. the curtains to let in some sun. dr...../p.....
- 3 Fill in these forms and ... them ... to me as soon as possible. h.....
- 4 Fearing an explosion, the teacher asked the students to st
- 5 Being absent-minded I stupidly ... into another car. b.....

Glosses: 3 forms: *official documents to be filled in* – 5 *absent-minded: forgetting things, lacking concentration and attention on what one is doing*

In pairs/small groups paraphrase/explain the words you are less familiar with and show how the verbs illustrate the meanings mentioned in the heading.

10.2 BACK: Return to an earlier state, time, situation



Back is frequently used in situations in which the given object and/or location are more abstract. Such metaphorical uses can be illustrated by:

- (a) John has **bought** the house **back**.
- (b) This happened **way back in** Antiquity.

The (a) sentence means that the house was originally ‘located in John’s possession’, then it belonged to somebody else, and now it is again John’s, i.e. it has returned to its original ‘location’.

The (b) sentence locates the given event in a time far removed from the time of speaking.

In both cases, an abstraction – a state of possession or time – is treated as if it were physical space. In other words, the characteristics of space are extended to abstract domains.

answer back to / talk back to – brought back – cut back – fall back on – set ... back – snap back to – thought back – trace ... back to – turned back – win back

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 1 This film has ... many memories of my childhood. | br |
| 2 It is very impolite to ... / ... a teacher/to a superior! | a..... /t..... |
| 3 When reading this book, I ... of my youth. | th |
| 4 The war ... the country’s economy ... by twenty years. | s |
| 5 He hoped to ... his girl-friend’s heart with a huge bouquet. | w..... |
| 6 Don’t let your mind wander, ... reality. | sn..... |

- 7 We have been able to ... our ancestors the 15th century. tr
- 8 I lost my job because they /down the working staff. c
- 9 If you can't do this task, you can us. f.....
- 10 Without a visa, immigrants will be by the border guards. t.....

Glosses: **2** speak in a rude way, without respect for the person – **4** delayed, retarded – **6** wander: move around without a precise purpose; snap back: go back fast and energetically – **7** were able to find the names of the people we descended from – **8** reduced the number – **9** can count on us – **10** are made to go back the way they came from

Exetest 1

bite back – come back – drop back – drove ... back – fall back on – fight back – head back – hit ... back – pay ... back – pulled back – see ... back – set ... back – slipped back into

- 1 If he bites you, don't hesitate to b.....
- 2 If you don't, these boys will pester you even more. f.....
- 3 We need to home now before it gets dark. h.....
- 4 Be careful, if you hit him, he will ... you h.....
- 5 Tell me frankly: when are you going to ... your debts ...? p.....
- 6 Last night we were supposed to ... the clocks ... one hour. s
- 7 Don't worry, I'll ... you ... tonight. s
- 8 After trying on a new shirt, he his old but comfortable overalls. sl
- 9 After the stroke his native language was the first to c
- 10 On the actual day of the wedding, he from the marriage. p.....
- 11 Prices always go up, they never /down. dr.....
- 12 When modern medicine does not work, people old cures. f.....
- 13 Fresh troops ... the enemy ... /down to its original positions. dr.....

Glosses: **2** pester: annoy – **5** debt: sum of money one owes to the person who gave it – **6** set back: to put the clock back to one hour earlier – **7** I'll accompany you to, I'll go back with you to – **8** slipped back: put back ... on – **9** stroke: a sudden and serious illness in the brain – **10** on the actual day: on the very day, on the day itself; withdrew, decided not to get married

Exetest 2

backache – backbone – backing – back issues – backlog – backscratching/backslapping – backup – backward – comeback – cutback – cutbacks – setback

- 1 To succeed you need not only ... and stamina but also intelligence. b
- 2 Because of ... in defence spending, my father lost his job. c.....
- 3 At the age of 58 the singer made an astonishing c.....
- 4 I've got a terrible ... after lifting all those heavy boxes. b
- 5 Without financial ..., a candidate doesn't stand a chance of being elected. b
- 6 After the long postal strike there was a huge ... of mail. b
- 7 Could you kindly send me ... 31 and 32 of your weekly magazine? b
- 8 Never forget to make a ... when you finish working with your computer. b
- 9 The revolution was definitely an economic s.....
- 10 The recession led to a ... in spending and in production. c.....
- 11 Politicians do a lot of mutual .../... . b/b.....
- 12 You seem to imply that I am Thank you very much for being so rude. b

Glosses: **1** backbone: strength of character; stamina: energy and strength – **2** cutbacks: reductions – **5** backing: help; stand a chance: have a chance – **6** backlog: a huge amount of work that has accumulated – **7** old or former magazines – **8** a copy of the file on a floppy or disk in case the original gets lost or damaged – **9** a delay – **10** reduction – **11** backscratching: help given to sb in return for the same of that person; backslapping: praise or congratulations by a person for sb in return for the same – **12** backward: not particularly capable or intelligent; rather slow

Exetest 3

back – backbiting – backfired – backpedalled – backtrack

- 1 I'm getting tired, I think we should ..., if you don't mind.
- 2 The government ... fast when the unions threatened to strike.
- 3 The coup ... as the army didn't support it.
- 4 A pat on the ... leads to a more lasting commitment than a payrise.

5 I would like you to speak to me directly rather than to hear
of your ... from other people.

Glosses: 1 go back – 2 reversed earlier decisions, came back on them – 3 backfired: had the opposite effect than the one intended – 4 a gentle tap or light slap on the back as a sign of appreciation or encouragement – 5 backbiting: unpleasant or negative talk about a person who is not present

10.3 BACK: key

10.1 back: return to an earlier location

1 put ... back – 2 drew back/pulled back – 3 hand ... back – 4 stand back – 5 backed

10.2 back: return to an earlier state, time, situation

1 brought back – 2 answer back to/talk back to – 3 thought back – 4 set ... back – 5 win back – 6 snap back to – 7 trace ... back to – 8 cut back – 9 fall back on – 10 turned back

Exetest 1

1 bite back – 2 fight back – 3 head back – 4 hit ... back – 5 pay ... back – 6 set ... back – 7 see ... back – 8 slipped back to – 9 come back – 10 pulled back – 11 drop back – 12 fall back – 13 drove ... back

Exetest 2

1 backbone – 2 cutbacks – 3 comeback – 4 backache – 5 backing – 6 backlog – 7 back issues – 8 backup – 9 setback – 10 cutback – 11 backscratching/back-slapping – 12 backward

Exetest 3

1 backtrack – 2 backpedalled – 3 backfired – 4 back – 5 backbiting

10.4 Expand and test your knowledge of ‘back’

1 *What are the primary senses of ‘back’? Illustrate them with a few examples.*

2 *Find the phrasal verbs with back corresponding to the following paraphrases.*

- | | |
|---|--------------|
| 1 to begin to return (when on a trip, journey) | to h |
| 2 to move back and bump into a car | to b |
| 3 to find the origin or the source of a rumour or event, of one’s ancestors | to tr |
| 4 to accompany sb the way they came | to see |
| 5 to become worse or return to a lower standard or to a bad habit | to sl |
| 6 to prevent to some extent the progress of sth | to s |
| 7 to reduce investment, aid, production | to c |
| 8 to withdraw from an earlier statement or policy | to b |
| 9 to go back the way one came | to t |
| 10 to reply in an impolite way to sb in a higher position | to a |
| 11 to give help or support to sb | to b |
| 12 to have the opposite effect than the one intended | to b |
| 13 to go back via the same road | to b |

3 *Explain the following in your own words.*

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------|
| 1 way back in history | ..... |
| 2 a flashback | ..... |
| 3 be backward | ..... |
| 4 make a backup | ..... |
| 5 have/get a backup | ..... |
| 6 a huge backlog (of mail) | ..... |
| 7 a back issue/number | ..... |
| 8 make a comeback | ..... |
| 9 give feedback | ..... |
| 10 bet on the wrong horse | ..... |

10.5 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'back''

2 Find the phrasal verbs with back corresponding to the following paraphrases.

1 to head back (for) – 2 to back (up) into a car – 3 to trace back – 4 to see sb back – 5 to slip back – 6 to set back – 7 to cut back – 8 to backpedal – 9 to turn back – 10 to answer back – 11 to back sb – 12 to backfire – 13 to backtrack

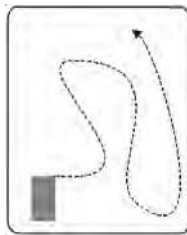
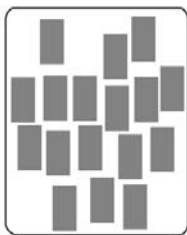
3 Explain the following in your own words.

- 1 a very long time ago
- 2 a scene in a film that refers to an event that happened earlier
- 3 to be slow to learn, not progressing in a normal way
- 4 a copy of a file one can use in case the original gets lost, damage
- 5 to get support, help
- 6 an amount of accumulated work as a result of an inactivity (a strike)
- 7 a former issue of a magazine, one that appeared earlier
- 8 to return to a former succesful performance
- 9 to give information about sth to the producer
- 10 to support the loser in a contest

11 ABOUT is dispersion

This section on **about** contains some 40 instantiations.

11.1 ABOUT: location or motion in vicinity but in no particular direction



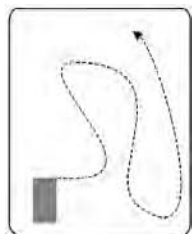
brought about – chase ... about – grope about/around – is ... about/around – laze about – lying about/littered about/around – mess about – running about – tossed about/around

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 1 The boys have nothing to do, so they just the house. | l |
| 2 The boss ... somewhere .../..., I heard his voice a few minutes ago. | i |
| 3 This boy should work rather than ... girls | ch..... |
| 4 I can't work with all those children r... .. and making so much noise. | r |
| 5 He always leaves his books, papers, clothes | l ...../l..... |
| 6 As it was dark, I had to to find the light switch. | gr |
| 7 The little sailboat was by the rough sea. | t |
| 8 Don't when you bring the dishes in or you may break them. | m |
| 9 The new management team many successful changes. | br |

Glosses: **1** stay somewhere without a purpose, doing nothing – **3** running after girls, flirting – **6** trying to find one's way in the dark by feeling things – **7** thrown up and down and about; rough sea: violent sea, with huge waves – **8** mess about: behave in a silly playful way – **9** realized

About commonly indicates location or motion in no specific direction, ‘here and there’ in a place. In American English, **around** would be more common in many of the sentences above.

11.2 ABOUT: from motion on a surface to mental motion on topics



about – beating about the bush – come about – feel about – get about – go about – nose about – playing about/around – pry about – talking about – tell ... about – thinking about – whispered about – worry about

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 1 By the way, you seemed to be worried: what were you? | th..... |
| 2 We were just Mary and her boyfriend when they arrived. | t..... |
| 3 You're back from your holidays. ... us ... it. | T |
| 4 You'd better stop with that girl, Joe, and look for a job. | pl..... |
| 5 How did that new system of government? | c |
| 6 How do you your new job? Is it exciting, challenging? | f..... |
| 7 Tomorrow I have to the task of cleaning my room. | g..... |
| 8 She has got bad legs and doesn't very much these days. | g..... |
| 9 Detectives like to at a crime scene to discover clues. | n..... |
| 10 The old lady likes to and collect gossip about the neighbours. | pr..... |
| 11 It is being that he is bankrupt. | wh..... |
| 12 It makes little sense to things you cannot change. | w |
| 13 Stop, and come straight to the point. | b.....a.....b..... |
| 14 It's a beautiful book .../on wildlife. | a |

Glosses: 4 flirting – 5 come about: originate – 7 proceed with, start with – 8 move around – 9 to look, examine closely things around a place to find clues related to the crime – 10 look around for rumours, affairs about others – 13 stop talking about sth without coming to the point – 14 wildlife: wild animals, birds

About has also various metaphorical or figurative senses. It can be applied to states and situations, which are then viewed as *surfaces* crossed by moving objects/entities. These ‘surfaces’ can be topics of *discussion, of thought, of feeling, of action*, etc

11.3 ABOUT: from vicinity to proximity in size, time, measure, quantity



about – counted about/around – have had about – is about (2x) – landed about/around – left ... about/around – was about to – was about/around – were ... about

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1 The police 50,000 demonstrators. | c..... |
| 2 The man was pretty tall, he one (meter) ninety. | w..... |
| 3 How much would a two-week trip to Egypt cost? – ... 1,000 to 1,500 euros. | c..... |
| 4 He ... this place fifteen years ago for the States. | l |
| 5 The plane two hours late. | l |
| 6 What time is it now? – It half past ten, I suppose. | i |
| 7 I (just) ... enough of this. | h |
| 8 Do you have more information? – No, that it. | i |
| 9 We ... (just) ... to leave when the Browns arrived. | w..... |
| 10 The speaker give his talk when all the lights went out. | w..... |

Glosses: 7 I'm fed up with it – 9 we were on the point of – 10 was going to, was on the point of starting

In many spatial as well as figurative meanings of **about**, there is the notion of 'closeness'. It is no surprise therefore that *proximity* is particularly prominent in its meaning related to the evaluation of *size, time or measure* of things, attitudes, feelings or events. (cf. also **around** for sentences 1–6).

Phrasal verbs + **about** convey the meaning of *proximity*:

- Ex. 1 **counted about**: the police evaluated, estimated, measured the number of people at *approximately/about* ...
 2 **was about/around**: the height of the person came close to/was approximately 1m. 90

11.4 ABOUT: key

11.1 ABOUT: location or motion in vicinity but in no particular direction

1 laze about – 2 is ... about/around – 3 chase ... about – 4 running about – 5 lying about/littered about – 6 grope about/around – 7 tossed about/around – 8 mess about – 9 brought about

11.2 ABOUT: from motion on a surface to mental motion on topics

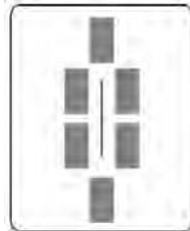
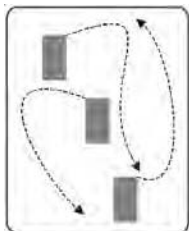
1 thinking about – 2 talking about – 3 tell ... about – 4 playing about/around – 5 come about – 6 feel about – 7 get about – 8 go about – 9 nose about – 10 pry about – 11 whispered about – 12 worry about – 13 beating about the bush – 14 about/on

11.3 ABOUT: from vicinity to proximity in size, time, measure

1 counted about/around – 2 was about/around – 3 About – 4 left ... about/around – 5 landed about/around – 6 is about – 7 have ... had about – 8 is about – 9 were ... about to – 10 were about to

12 (A)ROUND is vicinity or circular motion

12.1 (A)ROUND: Location or motion (in different directions) often viewed from a central point



be around – come (a)round – gathered round – handed round – looked around – passing ... (a)round – put ... (a)round – revolves (a)round – run ... (a)round – send ... (a)round – showed ... (a)round – take ... (a)round – travel (a)round

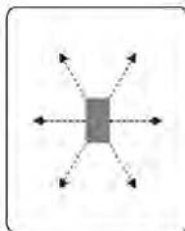
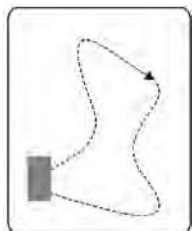
- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 The geese were able to ... freely ... the farmyard. | r |
| 2 I would like to the world for a couple of years. | tr |
| 3 If you want, I can ... you ... the Old City. | t |
| 4 An excellent guide ... us ... the castle. | sh |
| 5 Will you the whole day? | b |
| 6 Why don't you and see us? | c |
| 7 She to see if anybody was following her. | l |
| 8 Waiters and waitresses were ... appetizers and drinks | p |
| 9 ... these letters ... as soon as possible. | S |
| 10 The students their teacher to watch the experiment. | g |
| 11 ... a collar ... the dog's neck and keep him on the leash. | P |
| 12 The teacher /out the examination sheets/the handouts. | h |
| 13 Since the time of Copernicus we know that the earth the sun. | r |

Glosses: **1** geese < goose: a large duck with a long neck; farmyard: a space enclosed by farmbuildings, a fence, gate, etc – **6** visit – **7** waiter/waitress: male or female persons who serve guests/people at their tables in a restaurant or at a party – **11** leash: a cord or strip of leather for leading/controlling a dog – **12** handout: a printed document (a text, exercises, an exam, a piece of information, etc.) given to an audience, to students, etc. – **13** Copernicus: 17th century Polish scholar who showed that the earth turns/revolves around the sun

Most typically, **round** refers to motion seen from a given centre and going along a circular path. A less typical, though no less common, meaning of **round** indicates motion in different or in all directions. When location becomes more important than motion, **round** means ‘on all sides’ or ‘nearby’, ‘in the neighbourhood’. In some cases **round** can be replaced by **around**. In American English, these ‘**round**’ uses are regularized to ‘**around**’.

In British and American English **around** usually suggests motion that takes place in different directions within a circle. It may also suggest vague but close whereabouts (places), as in *I haven’t seen her around recently*.

12.2 (A)ROUND: figurative activities other than motion



be (a)round – come (a)round – coming (a)round – look around – passed (a)round – sent (a)round

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1 I think I will before I apply for this job. | l..... |
| 2 The news about the scandal soon the village. | p..... |
| 3 The message that was caused a great deal of commotion. | s |
| 4 Let’s do some spring cleaning because Easter will soon | b..... |
| 5 As days are getting shorter, one feels that winter is again. | c |
| 6 Only when the doctor gave him an injection did he | c |

Glosses: **3** confusion and excitement – **4** spring clean(ing): thorough cleaning after winter – **6** come round (US: come around): regain consciousness after fainting

Round and **around** are quite common with verbs expressing (figurative) activities other than motion such as *looking (a)round*, *spreading (a)round* news, etc.

The meaning of **round** is often extended to events (e.g. holidays, seasons) that recur cyclically and can thus be visualized as objects following a circular path. (4–5).

12.3 (A)ROUND: key

12.1 (A)round: location or motion viewed from a central point

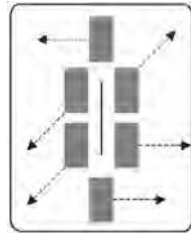
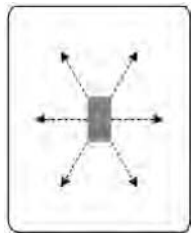
1 run ... (a)round – 2 travel (a)round – 3 take ... (a)round – 4 showed ... around – 5 be around – 6 come (a)round – 7 looked around – 8 passing ... (a)round – 9 Send ... (a)round – 10 gathered round – 11 Put ... (a)round – 12 handed (a)round – 13 revolves (a)round

12.2 (A)round: activities other than motion

1 look around – 2 passed (a)round – 3 sent (a)round – 4 be round – 5 coming (a)round – 6 come round (US: around)

13 ABOUT/(A)ROUND is dispersion vs. circular motion

13.1 ABOUT/(A)ROUND: motion along +/- circular paths in different directions



bring ... (a)round – drop (a)round – gather (a)round – glance (a)round – hand ... (a)round – linger around – loitering about/around – pass ... (a)round – scatter ... about/ (a)round – send ... (a)round – shop (a)round – turn around – wander (a)round

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 Children like to ... toys .../... . | sc..... |
| 2 Who is that person who has been/... all afternoon? | l..... |
| 3 How long do you think these strange people will? | l..... |
| 4 Let us the Christmas tree and sing some carols. | g..... |
| 5 ... the plate of cake ... and let everyone take a slice. | H..... |
| 6 ... the food ... so that everyone gets something to eat. | P..... |
| 7 Please ... your wife ... tomorrow so that we can meet her. | br..... |
| 8 Be sure to ... ../by/in/over if you are in the neighbourhood. | dr..... |
| 9 Is it OK if I ... my son ... tonight, he is anxious to meet you? | s |
| 10 If you want to buy a dress, I can with you to find the best bargain. | sh |
| 11 Please, and leave this building quickly, you're not wanted here. | t..... |
| 12 Let's the city until we find a nice restaurant. | w |
| 13 When you go through the doorway, the office to see if Sue is there. | gl..... |

Glosses: **1** leave the toys in different directions, everywhere, all over the place – **2** standing, hanging around without a purpose – **3** stay around – **4** sit together around; carols:

songs which christians sing at Christmas, the annual public holiday commemorating the birth of Christ – **5** hand (a)round: give to everybody (sitting around the table) – **8** visit us – **10** go to different shops in the neighbourhood; a bargain: a product which can be bought at an interesting, low price

About/(A)round can express motion along a circular path, in different directions within some bounded area, or in no particular direction. When emphasis falls on location rather than on movement, **about** and **(a)round** mean ‘on all sides’ or ‘nearby/in the neighbourhood’. There is thus semantic overlap between **about** and **around** as well as between **round** and **around**.

In pairs and taking turns paraphrase words you are less familiar with and show how the verbs exemplify ‘a movement along more or less circular paths in different directions’.

- Ex. 1 **glance (a)round**: to look (in a circular way) all around oneself
 2 **scatter ... (a)round**: to throw or leave the toys all around, in different directions

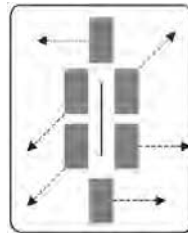
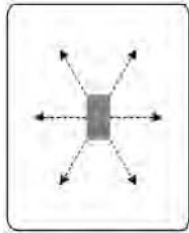
Exetest

are ... about/(a)round – call (a)round – hanging about/around – prowling about/(a)round – roaming around – snoop around – splashing about/(a)round – spreading ... about/(a)round – staggered about/(a)round – stick around – swimming about/(a)round

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 There is a fly in the soup, I’ll try and catch it. | sw |
| 2 At fancy-fairs there ... usually lots of thieves and pickpockets .../... . | a..... |
| 3 Our children love/... in the (swimming)pool. | spl..... |
| 4 The drunkard/... till he found a bench and fell asleep. | st..... |
| 5 If you continue to our property at night, I will call the police. | sn..... |
| 6 Please for a few more hours, we’ll need you. | st..... |
| 7 John must be Australia. | r |
| 8 Lock all the doors, I’ve seen youngsters/.... . | pr |
| 9 Instead of just, do something useful. | h |
| 10 I wonder who is ... all these rumours .../... . | spr..... |
| 11 if you’re in the area, I would love to see you. | C..... |

Glosses: **2** hanging/being about/(a)round and looking for sth to steal – **3** jump in the water while making it fly up in drops – **4** walked or moved in different directions in an uncertain way as if going to fall – **5** to look around in a secretive way to get information – **6** stay around and be accessible – **7** travelling about/around without any definite destination – **9** move around quietly looking for sth – **10** being somewhere doing nothing – **11** making stories known all around, over a large area – **12** visit us, drop in/by

13.2 ABOUT/(A)ROUND: (metaphorical) paths in all kinds of directions



asked around – bossing ... about/around – fool about/around – groping around for – whispered about/around

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1 I knew that he felt bad when he started an excuse. | gr..... |
| 2 It's high time Jeff realized that he should stop ... others .../... . | b..... |
| 3 It's being that Michael and Sue are about to separate. | wh..... |
| 4 The mother whether anybody had seen the children. | a..... |
| 5 Don't/..., there is too much work to be done. | f..... |

Glosses: **1** searching nervously, desperately for an excuse – **2** playing the boss and giving orders to people in an unpleasant way – **5** behave in a playful or childish and often irresponsible way

In their metaphorical senses, both **about** and **around** mean that someone is engaged in a continued or repetitious activity in different directions which is furthermore directed to no one or nothing in particular.

In pairs select a few verbs and show how they instantiate extended/metaphorical circular paths.

- Ex. 1 **grope around (for):** to search quickly, somewhat anxiously, desperately (the way one would look in all kinds of directions for a physical object) for an excuse, a solution, a way out of a problem, etc.
- 2 **boss ... about/around:** giving the impression that one has authority over people, that one is in command of a situation and of people around therefore telling others what to do, how to behave

13.3 ABOUT/(A)ROUND: key

13.1 ABOUT/(A)ROUND: movement along a circular path

1 scatter ... about/(a)round – 2 loitering about/around – 3 linger around – 4 gather (a)round – 5 Hand ... (a)round – 6 Pass ... (a)round – 7 bring ... (a)round – 8 drop (a)round – 9 send ... (a)round – 10 shop (a)round – 11 turn around – 12 wander (a)round – 13 glance (a)round

Exetest

1 swimming about/(a)round – 2 are ... about/(a)round – 3 splashing about/(a)round – 4 staggered about/(a)round – 5 snoop around – 6 stick around – 7 roaming around – 8 prowling about/(a)round – 9 hanging around – 10 spreading ... about/(a)round – 11 Call around

13.2 ABOUT/(A)ROUND: (metaphorical) paths in all kinds of directions

1 groping around for – 2 bossing ... about/around – 3 whispered about/around – 4 asked around – 5 fool about/around

13.4 Expand and test your knowledge of ‘about/(a)round’

1 *Give the main meanings of ‘about/(a)round’. Substantiate them with examples.*

2 *Provide the phrasal verbs corresponding to the following paraphrases.*

1 to behave in a silly and playful way

to m

- 2 to scatter things here and there to l.....
- 3 to start to do sth to g.....
- 4 to go about cautiously, looking for a chance to steal to pr.....
- 5 to travel without any definitive destination to r
- 6 to tell rumours, make them known to others to spr.....
- 7 to cause a change to br.....
- 8 to look around and ask people for information on sth interesting to n.....
- 9 that's *more or less* what I know that's
- 10 to inquire too closely into sb's private affairs to pr.....
- 11 to begin, to start, to be on the point of doing sth to b.....
- 12 to talk about sth without coming to the point to b.....
- 13 to walk around in an unsteady way, about to fall to st
- 14 standing about in a public place doing nothing to l.....
- 15 to regain consciousness to c

3 Explain the following phrasal verbs in your own words.

- 1 to come round/US: around
- 2 to be about/around
- 3 to send a word/a message around
- 4 to hang about/(a)round
- 5 to grope about (for an explanation)
- 6 to loiter about/around
- 7 to shop (a)round
- 8 to glance (a)round
- 9 to linger about/around
- 10 to hand around a document
- 11 to fool about/around
- 12 to boss ... about/around

13.5 Key to ‘Expand and test your knowledge of ‘about/(a)round’

2 Provide the phrasal verbs corresponding to the following paraphrases.

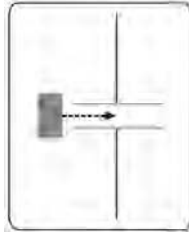
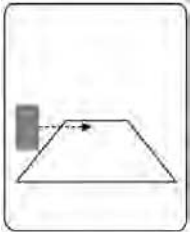
1 mess about – 2 litter about – 3 go about – 4 prowl around – 5 roam/travel around – 6 spread about/around – 7 bring about – 8 nose about – 9 about (what I know) – 10 pry – 11 be about – 12 beat about the bush – 13 stagger about/around – 14 loiter about/around – 15 come round/(US: around)

3 Explain the following phrasal verbs in your own words.

1 pay a visit, pop in; regain consciousness – 2 be present, available – 3 inform people – 4 wait in a place doing nothing – 5 search with difficulty for an explanation – 6 stand somewhere idly, just looking around or move without any real purpose – 7 compare prices of goods in different shops – 8 to quickly look (a)round – 9 stay somewhere longer than necessary whereas others have left – 10 give, pass around a document – 11 behave in a casual or irresponsible way – 12 give sb/people orders in a superior and often unpleasant way

14 ACROSS is motion to opposite side

14.1 ACROSS (preposition): motion from one side of a surface to another



is across – live ... across – ran across – see ... across – walked across

- 1 The children the road without looking if anything was coming. r.....
- 2 He is the first man to have those mountains. w.....
- 3 John and Mary ... just ... the street. l.....
- 4 Betty’s office the hall. i.....
- 5 The teachers of that school always ... their pupils ... the busy road. s.....

Glosses: *1 ran to the other side of the road – 5 supervise the children crossing the street*

Across is commonly used when an object moves from one side of a surface, for instance a field, to another. Sometimes no movement takes place, in which case **across** means *on the opposite of* or *stretching from one side to the other*.

14.2 ACROSS (particle): figurative motion crossing to a human receiver

came across/came over – get ... across – putting across – came across

- 1 This young teacher does not know how to ... his ideas ... to his pupils. g.....
- 2 Marketing is about to the consumer the best qualities of a product. p.....

3 She /... .. as a very intelligent and kind person. c.....

4 I that strange word not so long ago. c.....

Glosses: **1** pass the ideas on, explain them, make them understood – **2** explaining to the customer – **3** she gave the impression or her interlocutor had the impression that she was ... – **4** I met, found, saw that word unexpectedly or by chance

In Western culture, the ability to understand what is being said or the human mind in general is often seen as a surface, and ideas as objects which cross this surface.

Across is also used figuratively to denote *something that happens by chance, unexpectedly*, as in (4).

14.3 ACROSS: key

14.1 ACROSS (preposition): motion from one side of a surface to another

1 ran across – 2 walked across – 3 live across – 4 is across – 5 see ... across

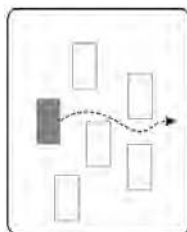
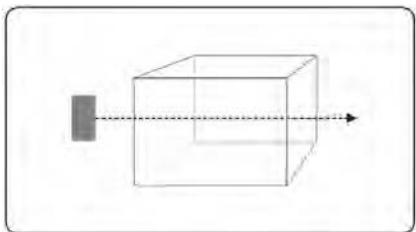
14.2 ACROSS (particle): figurative motion crossing to a human receiver

1 get ... across – 2 putting across – 3 came across/came over – 4 came across

15 THROUGH is crossing a container

Through is both a preposition and an adverbial particle. It is most frequently used as a preposition.

15.1 THROUGH: motion inside an entity from end to end



come ... through/get ... through – drive through – let ... through – through (2 x)

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1 Since the doors were locked, we had to ... in ... the window. | c |
| 2 The fierce dog would not ... us ... to the farm. | l |
| 3 We took a path ... the wood. | thr |
| 4 At rush hour we didn't want to New York City. | dr |
| 5 When the neighbours quarrel we hear everything ... the wall. | thr |

Through means that one object/entity goes into another one (e.g. a forest, a city, a tunnel, a substance) and crosses it from end to end or from side to side.

15.2 THROUGH: activities viewed as complete(d) motions

am through – be through – get through – get ... through – got through – put ... through – slept through – went through – wet through/soaked through

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 Everybody was overjoyed when Mary ... her exams. | g |
| 2 I'm sorry to tell you, but I ... with Charles. | a |
| 3 When will you ... with your work? | b |
| 4 We were so exhausted that we ... 24 hours. | sl |

- 5 I can tell you, we ... many hardships during the war. w.....
- 6 The downpour was such that we got ... /... .. w...../s.....
- 7 Can you ... me ... to the headmistress? p
- 8 I wonder whether they will ... this bill ... Parliament. g
- 9 You were lucky to ... customs with so many cigarettes in your suitcase. g

Glosses: **1** passed her exams – **2** our relationship/friendship is over/finished – **3** will you have finished – **6** heavy rain; completely wet – **7** connect me with – **8** when this bill will be voted by Parliament

When used figuratively or metaphorically **through** refers to activities other than spatial movement (e.g. *looking, living, reading, experiencing*) and the object affected rather completely by these activities is often a *time unit, a text, an examination, or any other experience*. Going *through* such an experience is like going through a forest from one end to the other or passing a gate.

In pairs paraphrase some of the words you are less familiar with and show how **through** contributes to the meaning of the verbs: ‘*going through an experience*’.

Exetest 1

brought ... through – come through – fall through – fight ... through – follow ... through – hear ... through – pass through – pull through – push ... through – skimmed through – work ... through

- 1 My grandmother ... her family ... the hardships of the 2nd World War. br
- 2 It was nice of my parents to ... with money to buy a car. c.....
- 3 If we are not careful this deal will f
- 4 In order to get out of the stadium we had to ... our way ... the crowd. w.....
- 5 Though he did not believe her he decided to ... her story ... to the end. h
- 6 He watched the ghost approach the door and ... it into the corridor. p
- 7 After he had a second heart attack I was not sure if he would p

- 8 This was a good project, but he did not have the willpower to ... it f.....
- 9 I was late in applying for the job, but they promised to ... my application p.....
- 10 By lack of time I only (the book), but I thought it was very good. sk

Glosses: **1** hardships: sufferings caused by lack of basic necessities or money – **2** give (money) – **3** deal: (business) agreement; will fail, will not succeed – **5** to listen to the complete story – **6** ghost: apparition of the spirit of a dead person – **7** recover from this serious illness – **8** to complete, to continue to the end – **9** getting my application officially in and have it accepted – **10** I only read quickly, without paying attention to detail

Exetest 2

filtered through to – got through – read through – slipped through to – squeeze through – struggled through – thought ... through

- 1 My friend was willing to my essay and correct mistakes. r.....
- 2 My friend passed enough exams, so he his first year at university. g.....
- 3 The burglar was slim enough to a tiny window into the house. sq
- 4 He had revised enough for his exam, so he str.....
- 5 When the complaints of the workers the managers, they were worried about the threat of a strike. f.....
- 6 The police set up roadblocks throughout the city to catch the murderer, but he was able to(the net) and escape. sl
- 7 The teacher was happy that the students ... their answers ... before writing them down. th.....

Glosses: **3** slim: thin, not thick or fat – **4** succeeded but with difficulty – **5** reached slowly, bit by bit – **7** that the students considered their answers fully, seriously

15.3 THROUGH: key

15.1 THROUGH: motion inside an entity from end to end

1 come ... through/get through – 2 let ... through – 3 through – 4 drive through – 5 through

15.2 THROUGH: activities viewed as complete motions

1 got through – 2 am through – 3 be through – 4 slept through – 5 went through – 6 wet through/soaked through – 7 put ... through – 8 get ... through – 9 get through

Exetest 1

1 brought ... through – 2 come through – 3 fall through – 4 work ... through – 5 hear ... through – 6 pass through – 7 pull through – 8 follow ... through – 9 push ... through – 10 skimmed through

Exetest 2

1 read through – 2 got through – 3 squeeze through – 4 struggled through – 5 filtered through to – 6 slip through – 7 thought ... through

15.4 Expand and test your knowledge of 'through'

1 Replace the parts in italics by a phrasal verb with through.

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 1 to be able to reach sb, to be connected with sb (on the phone) | to g |
| 2 to be completely wet | to be s |
| 3 to read very quickly and understand the main ideas | to sk |
| 4 to succeed in realising sth very difficult | to p |
| 5 to examine quickly or read the names or the points on a list | to r |
| 6 to wait patiently until sth boring finishes | to s |
| 7 to endure sth painful or difficult times | to g |
| 8 to pass quickly, quietly, secretly through sth (a net) | to sl |
| 9 to do sth completely | to do sth a |

2 Explain the following in your own words.

- 1 a fast train/(US) a through train
- 2 throughout the country
- 3 He's an Englishman through and through.

15.5 Key to 'Expand and test your knowledge of 'through''

1 Replace the parts in italics by a phrasal verb with through

1 to get through – 2 to be soaked through – 3 to skim through – 4 to pull sth through – 5 to run through – 6 to sit through – 7 to go through – 8 to slip through – 9 all the way through

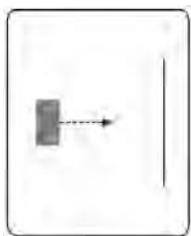
2 Explain the following in your own words.

1 a train that only stops at very important stations or not at all – 2 everywhere in the country – 3 he has many features that are typical for an Englishman

16 BY is vicinity or path

By is not a frequently used particle or preposition. Spatially it means that an object is near or at the side of an other object or that it moves closer to an other one.

16.1 BY: location or motion near or at the side of an entity



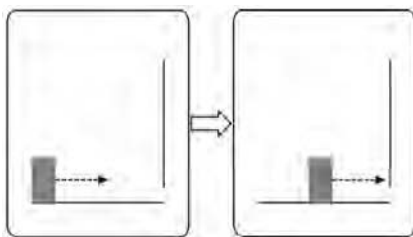
be by – drop by – is by – live by – live by, fly by – live nearby – rolling by – sat by – slip by – on stand-by – stand by

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 1 Our house <i>/close to the church/near the church.</i> | i |
| 2 She <i>/next to her father.</i> | s |
| 3 Emergency departments are 24 hours. | o |
| 4 We the M1 motorway/US: highway. | l |
| 5 I see these people quite often, I think they must | l |
| 6 How could bystanders without intervening? | st..... |
| 7 Please be patient and I will in an hour. | b |
| 8 Why don't you in the evening? | dr |
| 9 Since we <i>/close to the airport, jets always</i> | l /fl..... |
| 10 For weeks lorries have been making an awful lot of dust and noise. | r |
| 11 I let my only chance How stupid of me! | sl..... |

Glosses: 2 nearby, next to, close to – 6 be present and not act while sth serious is happening – 7 back, with you, be at your disposal – 8 pay a casual visit – 11 slip by: pass

Spatially **by** carries the meaning that one entity is near or at the side of another or moves closer to it.

16.2 BY: closeness or location in time and measurement units

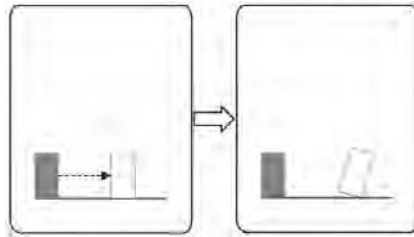


by the dozen – by the hour, by the line – by per cent – by tomorrow – passed by, went by

- 1 Everything has to be ready /before tomorrow.
- 2 Inflation went up last year ... almost two
- 3 For translations I'm paid not but
- 4 Eggs are often sold
- 5 Our holidays /... .. like lightning.

Our object's being or coming close to another can serve as a basis for numerous figurative uses of **by**, e.g. those expressing a 'means' or an 'arrival' at a time limit, at a given unit of measurement, at a way of doing something, at an effect, and the like.

16.3 BY: ‘cause – effect’, means viewed as two close objects



by appearances – by birth – by chance – by, through determination – by lightning – by oil ... gas – by-product – by the workers, ... by the unions – by who – by working – get by

- 1 We should avoid judging
- 2 Most houses are now heated or
- 3 was this play written? ... Shakespeare?
- 4 A wildcat strike is a strike organised , not
- 5 hard you may earn a good living.
- 6 One achieves a lot .../through
- 7 I met him/... accident.
- 8 During the storm two people were struck
- 9 He was born in Great Britain and was therefore British
- 10 Thanks to his small pension, he was able to
- 11 Plastic is a ...-... of oil refining.

As **on, by** stresses *contact, closeness*; the latter can occur in a situation in which an activity affects a given object or in which one event causes another event. Very often sentences conveying a cause – effect relation are expressed in *passive constructions*.

16.4 BY: key

16.1 BY: location near or at the side of an entity

- 1 is by – 2 sat by – 3 on stand-by – 4 live by – 5 live nearby – 6 stand by – 7 be by – 8 drop by – 9 live by, fly by – 10 rolling by – 11 slip by

16.2 By: location in time and measurement units

1 by tomorrow – 2 by almost two per cent – 3 by the hour, by the line – 4 by the dozen – 5 passed by/went by

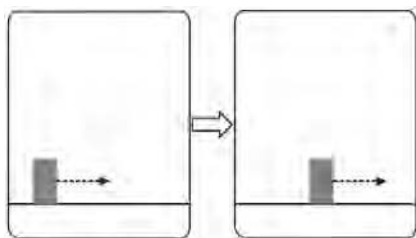
16.3 By: ‘cause – effect’, means viewed as two close objects

1 by appearances – 2 by oil or gas – 3 By who – 4 by the workers, not by the unions – 5 By working – 6 by/through determination – 7 by chance – 8 by lightning – 9 by birth – 10 get by – 11 by-product

17 ALONG is parallel path or entity

Along is not used frequently; it can function as a preposition and as an adverb.

17.1 ALONG: to be/to move towards the end of sth long



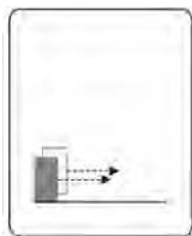
be along – bring ... along – drive along – go along – live along – move along – pass along – pop along – rattling along – spinning along/humming along – standing along – take ... along

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1 The old houses the river will have to be demolished. | st..... |
| 2 People who the motorway complain about the noise. | l |
| 3 Go ahead, I'll shortly. | b |
| 4 Make sure to your camera to the zoo. | br |
| 5 We'll have to eat on the trip, so some food | t |
| 6 Please slowly, the icy roads are treacherous. | dr |
| 7 this path and you'll arrive at the lake. | G..... |
| 8 We need to, we can't stay here for ever. | m |
| 9 As you the fence, the entrance gate will be on your right. | p |
| 10 Don't hesitate to if you are in the area. | p |
| 11 The old car is still, but it may break down any time. | r |
| 12 The new car is very nicely. | sp..... |

Glosses: **3** *be along*: will follow and catch up with you soon – **6** *dangerous icy surfaces on the road on which a car can start skidding* – **10** *to pay us a visit* – **11** *rattles along*: moving with short sharp noises – **12** *is spinning along/humming along*: moves along well; fast and smooth

Spatially **along** indicates the presence of an object on the side (alongside) of another narrow but long object. The object can be static or as is most often the case progressing towards the end of this long object.

17.2 ALONG: feelings are viewed as accompanying objects



bouncing along/coming along – get along – go along – played along – struggle along – swept ... along

- 1 With a few reservations I would with most of what he said.. g.....
- 2 This maths course is extremely difficult, but I'll continue to str.....
- 3 You seem to very well with your new neighbours. g.....
- 4 How is your work proceeding? – It's /... .. pretty well. b...../c.....
- 5 The speaker was so good that he ... the audience sw.....
- 6 This political party has with us for a year now, but I still would not trust them. pl.....

Glosses: **1** I would agree – **2** struggle along: try very hard (notwithstanding the difficulties) to succeed – **3** have a good relationship with – **4** proceeding: coming along, progressing; bouncing/coming along: progressing vigorously; to bounce: to move quickly (up and down); for example: balls bounce – **5** creating so much enthusiasm that nobody got bored or disinterested – **6** trust: believe that one can rely on them

Attitudes, feelings such as agreement or disagreement, impressions of difficulty, work, etc. are viewed as companions with whom we proceed along on the road of life.

17.3 **ALONG: key**

17.1 Along: to be or to move towards the end of sth long

1 standing along – 2 live along – 3 be along – 4 bring... along – 5 take ... along –
6 drive along – 7 go along – 8 move along – 9 pass along – 10 pop along –
11 rattling along – 12 spinning along/humming along

17.2 Along: feelings are viewed as accompanying objects

1 go along – 2 struggle along – 3 get along/on – 4 bouncing along/coming
along – 5 swept along – 6 played along

